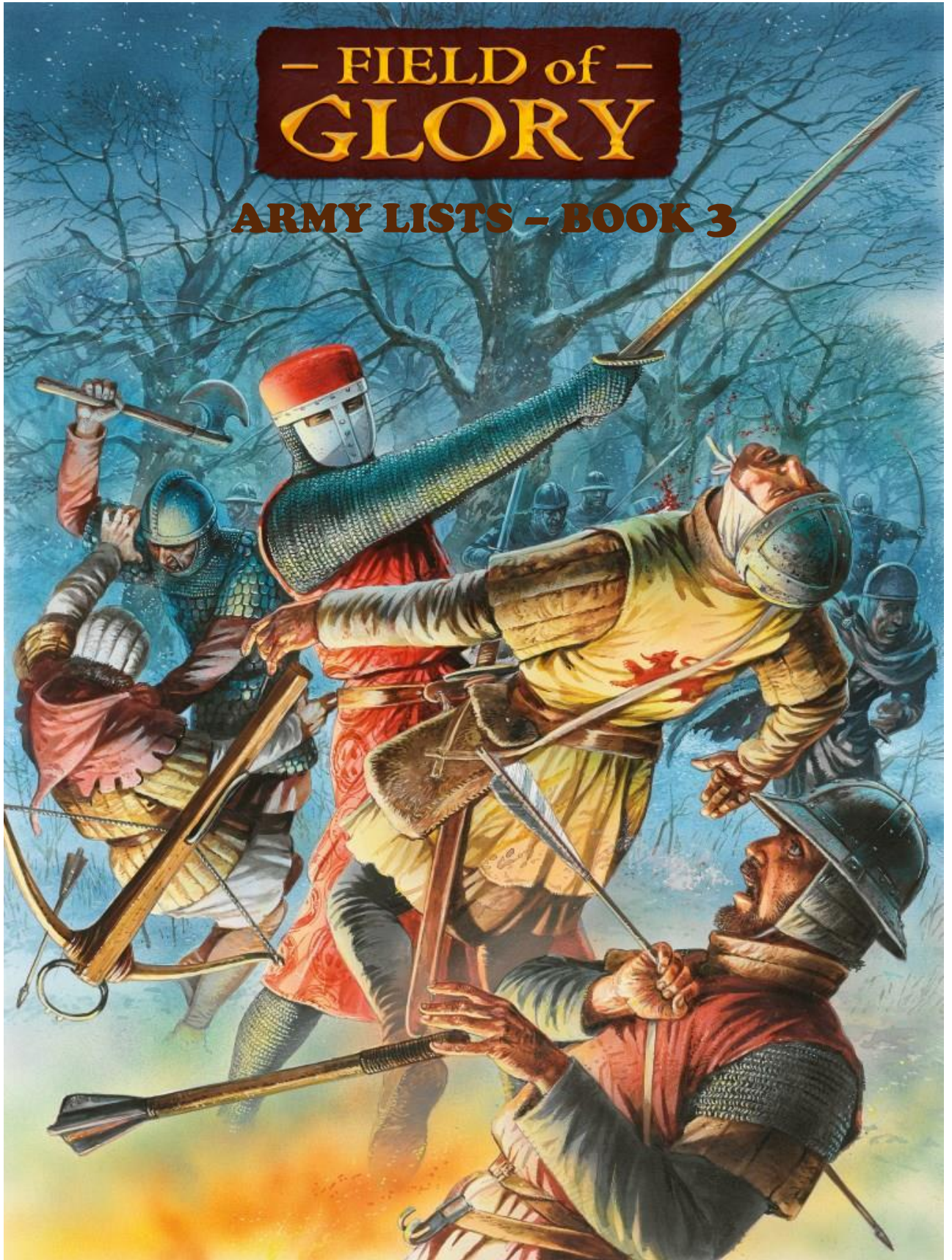


– FIELD of – GLORY

ARMY LISTS – BOOK 3



EARLY MEDIEVAL TO LATE MEDIEVAL

FIELD OF GLORY

Army Lists - Book 3

Edition 3.1

Updated by Terry Shaw

Cover artwork by Peter Dennis

Editor dedication

Special thanks to: Graham Briggs and Steve Murton

CONTENTS

| | | | |
|--|-----------|---|------------|
| INTRODUCTION | 4 | CATALAN COMPANY..... | 81 |
| KORYO KOREAN | 6 | CONDOTTA ITALIAN..... | 83 |
| EARLY HUNGARIAN | 8 | LATE PLANTAGENET ENGLISH (CONTINENTAL)..... | 85 |
| TAIFA ANDALUSIAN..... | 10 | LATE PLANTAGENET AND EARLY TUDOR ENGLISH (BRITAIN)..... | 87 |
| MEDIEVAL SPANISH AND PORTUGUESE | 12 | MING CHINESE..... | 89 |
| LATE HEIAN TO MUROMACHI JAPANESE | 15 | TIMURID, BLACK SHEEP TURCOMAN OR WHITE SHEEP TURCOMAN | 91 |
| NORMAN | 17 | AZTEC..... | 93 |
| ITALO-NORMAN..... | 18 | YI KOREAN..... | 95 |
| MEDIEVAL FRENCH | 20 | TUPÍ | 97 |
| EARLY MEDIEVAL GERMAN..... | 22 | MEDIEVAL SCOTTISH (IN FRANCE) | 98 |
| LATER MEDIEVAL GERMAN..... | 23 | HUSSITE | 99 |
| COMMUNAL ITALIAN | 25 | INCA..... | 101 |
| SCOTS ISLES AND HIGHLANDS | 27 | LATER HUNGARIAN | 103 |
| MEDIEVAL SCOTS..... | 28 | ORDONNANCE FRENCH | 105 |
| KOMNENAN BYZANTINE | 30 | MAPUCHE OR ARAUCANIAN..... | 107 |
| ANGLO-NORMAN AND EARLY PLANTAGENET ENGLISH..... | 32 | ORDONNANCE BURGUNDIAN | 108 |
| CRUSADER | 34 | SANTA HERMANDAD NUEVA CASTILIAN | 110 |
| MEDIEVAL WELSH | 36 | CUMAN | 112 |
| MEDIEVAL BURMESE | 38 | PAPAL ITALIAN..... | 113 |
| GHURID AFGHAN | 40 | LATER RUS AND EARLY RUSSIAN | 115 |
| JURCHEN-JIN..... | 42 | POST-VIKING SCANDINAVIAN..... | 117 |
| MEDIEVAL IRISH..... | 44 | LATER SICILIAN & NAPLES..... | 119 |
| AYYUBID EGYPTIAN | 46 | THAI KINGDOMS..... | 121 |
| ANGLO-IRISH..... | 47 | LAN XANG..... | 123 |
| MEDIEVAL CYPRIOT | 49 | APPENDIX 1 – ALLIED LISTS | 125 |
| MOSLEM INDIAN SULTANATES | 51 | ALBANIAN ALLIES..... | 125 |
| SOUTH-EASTERN WOODLAND CULTURE | 53 | ANATOLIAN TURCOMAN ALLIES | 125 |
| MONGOL CONQUEST | 55 | CENTRAL AMERICAN ALLIES | 125 |
| LATER RUSSIAN ALLIES (ONLY TATAR) – SEE LATER RUS AND EARLY RUSSIAN LIST | 56 | CHANCA ALLIES..... | 125 |
| MEDIEVAL INDONESIAN OR MALAY | 57 | CHIMU ALLIES | 126 |
| TEUTONIC KNIGHTS | 59 | CILICIAN ARMENIAN ALLIES | 126 |
| MAMLUK EGYPTIAN..... | 61 | EARLY SERBIAN ALLIES..... | 126 |
| YUAN CHINESE..... | 63 | GERMAN CITY ALLIES | 126 |
| LATE BYZANTINE..... | 65 | GERMAN ECCLESIASTICAL ALLIES..... | 127 |
| MIDDLE PLANTAGENET ENGLISH..... | 67 | GRANADINE ALLIES..... | 127 |
| SWISS..... | 69 | ITALIAN FEUDAL ALLIES..... | 127 |
| OTTOMAN TURKISH..... | 71 | JAPANESE WARRIOR MONK ALLIES | 128 |
| LATER SERBIAN..... | 73 | MEDIEVAL FRISIAN OR OTHER FREE CANTON ALLIES..... | 128 |
| LATER POLISH | 75 | MOLDAVIAN OR WALLACHIAN ALLIES | 128 |
| LATER LOW COUNTRIES..... | 77 | THAI ALLIES..... ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED. | |
| MEDIEVAL SCANDINAVIAN | 79 | | |

INTRODUCTION

Field of Glory is a historical miniature tabletop wargaming rules system for anyone interested in recreating the battles of the ancient and medieval eras. This companion is designed to be used alongside the Field of Glory rulebook and covers the better-known armies of the world from the beginning of the Early Medieval period until the end of the Later Medieval period at about 1500AD..

This period includes the creation of the nations of Medieval Europe (French, German, English etc.) and their development as they progress into the 15th century. Also covered are the armies of India, China Japan and other far eastern empires along with the remote empires of the Inca and Aztecs of South and Central America. Add to this mix the whirlwind invasions of the Mongols and we have a diverse selection of weapons and troops types matching any other period in history.

The lists in this book have been fully updated to make them compatible with the changes introduced in Field of Glory Version 3. They should be used as replacements for those lists published in earlier books such as "Storm of Arrows", "Eternal Empire" and "Oath of Fealty", and will also replace some of the lists which appeared in "Empires of the Dragon" and "Lost Scrolls".

As you look at each army, you will find the following sections:

- Brief Historical notes on the army, its wars, its famous generals, weapons and/or troop types.
- Instruction for building a customised army using our points system.
- A table with a full list of core and optional troops.
- A separate table for each of the main armies to be used when the army is only represented as an ally to another nation's army.
- Note that all armies have an allied list even if that army never provided such a contingent. This is so that players can use non-historical armies and alliances as part of a campaign or a special what-if scenario. They should not be used in other circumstances.
- A number of **allied lists** for those nations who often appear in history as a separate contingent allied to another nation.

HOW TO USE THE LISTS

To give balanced games, armies can be selected using the points system. The more effective the troops, the more each base costs in points. The maximum points for an army will usually be set at between 600 and 800 points for a singles game for 2 to 4 hours play. We recommend 800 points for 15mm singles tournament games (650 points for 25mm) and 1000 points for 15mm doubles games.

The army lists specify which troops can be used in a particular army. No other troops can be used. The number of bases of each type in the army must conform to the specified minima and maxima. Troops that have restrictions on when they can be used cannot be used with troops with a conflicting restriction. For example, troops that can only be used "before 1150 AD" cannot be used with troops that can only be used "from 1150 AD". All special instructions applying to an army list must be adhered to. They also apply to allied contingents supplied by the army. All armies must have a C-in-C and at least one other commander. No army can have more than 4 commanders in total, including C-in-C, sub-commanders and ally commanders.

All armies must have a supply camp. This is free unless fortified. A fortified camp, field fortifications and portable defences can only be used if specified in the army list.

Allied contingents can only be used if specified in the army list. Most allied contingents have their own allied contingent list, to which they must conform unless the main army's list specifies otherwise.

BATTLE GROUPS

All troops are organized into battle groups. Commanders, supply camps and field fortifications are not troops and are not assigned to battle groups. Portable defences are not troops, but are assigned to specific battle groups. Battle groups must obey the following restrictions:

- The number of bases in a battle group must correspond to the range specified in the army list.
- Each battle group must initially comprise an even number of bases. The only exceptions to this rule are:
 - Battle groups, whose army list specifies them as 2/3 of one type and 1/3 of another, can comprise 9 bases if this is within the battle group size range specified by the list.
 - Battle groups of elephants, chariots and knights may be of 3 bases - only if their army list specifies that as an option.
- A battle group can only include troops from one line in a list, unless the list permits a mixed formation by specifying fractions of the battle group to be of types from two lines. e.g. 2/3 spearmen, 1/3 archers.
- All troops in a battle group must be of the same quality and training. When a choice of quality or training is given in a list, this allows battle groups to differ from each other. It does not permit variety within a single battle group.
- Unless specifically stated otherwise in an army list, all troops in a battle group must be of the same armour class. When a choice of armour class is given in a list, this allows battle groups to differ from each other. It does not permit variety within a battle group.

EXAMPLES

Here are sections of some actual army lists, which will help us to explain the basics and some special features. The lists specify the following items for each historical type included in the army:

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|------|-----------------------|----|-----|-----|
| Hungarian nobles and gentry | Only before 1200AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 3-8 |
| | Only before 1060AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | |
| | Only from 1060AD to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | |
| | Only from 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4 | |

Special features of the above example:

- Hungarian nobles and gentry can be used during any of 3 periods by date. These are: before 1060AD, between 1060AD and 1149AD and from 1150AD until the end of the period - 1500AD. There is also an additional option of selecting the top row of cavalry during any of the first 2 periods, and in the 3rd period, but only from 1150AD to 1200 AD.
- Troop Type - comprising Type, Armour, Quality and Training.
- Capabilities – comprising Shooting and Close Combat capabilities.
- Points cost per base.
- Minimum and maximum number of bases in each battle group.
- Minimum and maximum number of bases in the army.
- The cavalry must be organized in battle groups of 4 or 6 bases.
- The knights must be organized in battle groups of 4 bases only, except that the superior heavily armoured knights may also be used in battlegroups of 3 bases.
- At least 3 bases must be chosen, but no more than 8 bases are permitted in total.

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------|----------------------|-----|--------------------|---|-------------|------|------|
| Andalusian spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 2/3 or all | 8-12 | 8-24 |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | |
| Supporting archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | | Drilled or Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 1/3 or none | | |
| Separately deployed archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-8 |
| | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 8-24 |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | |
| | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | |

Special features:

- Battle groups of Andalusian spearmen can either be entirely of Heavy Foot Defensive Spearmen, or can have 2/3 of their bases as Heavy Foot Defensive Spearmen and 1/3 as Light Foot with Bow. If entirely of Heavy Foot they must be organized in battle groups of 8, 10 or 12 bases. If mixed heavy foot and light foot they must be in battle groups of 9 or 12 bases – they cannot be 8 bases strong as it would not be possible for (exactly) 1/3 of the bases to be Light Foot.
- A minimum of 16 bases must be selected, of which 8 must be archers in a battlegroup of medium foot and 8 must be in battlegroups containing spearmen.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------|----------|----------|-----------|---|------------------|----|-----|--------------------|
| Milites | Knights | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | 16-48 |
| Update Milites to veteran | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | Up to 1/2 of bases |
| Further upgrade veteran milites as bodyguards | Knights | Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 4 | Up to 1 BG |

Special features:

- Milites are normally selected as Average, however, up to 1/2 of them may be upgraded to Superior. In this example, there must be a minimum number of 16 milites in the army, of which 8 (1/2 of 16) can be upgraded to Superior.
- One of the battlegroups of Superior milites (4 only) may additionally be upgraded to Elite.

| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------|----------|----------|-----------|---|----------------------|----|-----|---------------------|
| Duke Williams invasion of England in 1066AD | | | | | | | | | |
| Downgrade milites lacking horses to: | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive, Swordsmen | 13 | 6-8 | 1/3 to 2/3 of bases |
| | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive, Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | |

Special features:

- In addition to the rules above for upgrading milites to Superior, if you choose the special campaign of 1066 AD you must select and pay for some of them (at lower cost) as dismounted due to lack of horses. For example, if you selected 18 milites, then at least 6 of them (min 1/3 of 18) and no more than 12 of them (max 2/3 of 18 must be paid for as heavy foot. All other milites (including any Elite ones) must remain mounted.
- The special instructions for the Norman list allow you to dismount any remaining mounted milites as normal (other than any Elite) at deployment time as specified in the rules.

Koryo Korean

From 918 AD the Koryo leader Taejo fought the ruling Shilla factions in a Unification War that lasted until the Koryo Dynasty was created in 936AD. The dynasty resisted Mongol attacks during six major campaigns from 1231 AD to 1259AD when, worn out after decades of fighting, they were forced to swear allegiance to Kublai Khan. They were never conquered by the Mongols but became reluctant allies during the Mongol led invasions of Japan in 1274 AD and 1281 AD. The Koryo survived the collapse of the Mongol Yuan dynasty, lasting until 1392AD when an internal revolt by General Yi finally brought the Dynasty to an end. This list covers Koryo Korean armies from 936AD to 1392AD.

Troop Notes

The Koreans employed an increasing number of gunpowder-based weapons. Multiple launch tubes were capable of firing up to 115 arrows and later these were adapted to fire large and small rockets. Early handguns fired arrows rather than bullets.

The Koryo during their long reign developed several guard units which were loyal to the ruling family rather than independent nobles or regional governors. The To-bang were a unit of spearmen. The Tae-gak were a crossbow regiment. The Singi were mounted lancers. All were well armoured. To-bang and Tae-gak guard units wore leather or metal hauberks under their outer clothing. Kwang-gun troops were from a new professional soldier class that had replaced the older regional military settlers and professionals that had comprised the provincial troops.

The Py-lom-u-ban was a special force formed to fight Jurchen and Liao armies after 1100AD. Of these, the Singi-gun were the cavalry and the Sinbugun were the Kwang-gun infantry armed with shields and long spears with curved points. A third group in the force was called the Hang-ma-gun and consisted of Buddhist monks armed with javelins and shields.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Singi guard.
- Kwang-gun spearmen, archers and crossbowmen can be in separate battle groups, or in mixed battle groups, half spearmen, half archers or half spearmen, half crossbowmen.
- Sinbugun spearmen, archers and crossbowmen can be in separate battle groups, or in mixed battle groups of half Pole arms, half archers or half Pole arms, half crossbowmen.
- The total number of bases of Kwang-gun spearmen in the army cannot exceed the total number of Kwang-gun archers and crossbowmen.
- The total number of bases of Medium Foot crossbowmen in the army cannot exceed the number of bases of Medium Foot archers.
- Mongol allies cannot be used with Jin allies.

| Koryo Korean | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|------------------|-------------|----------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------|----------------------------|------|-------|
| Territory Types: Mountain, Hilly, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sungi guard | Cataphracts | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 4-8 (0-4 from 1100AD) | | |
| | Cavalry | Armoured | | | | | 18 | | | | |
| Kwang-gun cavalry | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-12 (0-6 from 1100AD) | | |
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 6-24 (0-12 from 1100AD) | | |
| Kwang-gun troops in mixed battle groups | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 1/2 | | | |
| | | | | | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 (0-12 from 1100AD) | | |
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun archers or crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 6-24 (0-12 from 1100AD) | | |
| Skirmishing Kwang-gun archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Singi-gun cavalry | From 1100AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Sinbugun 'spearmen' | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 8 | 6-8 | 6-16 | |
| Sinbugun in mixed formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 8 | 1/2 | | |
| | | | | | | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | 6-16 | |
| Sinbugun archers or crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| Hang-ma-gun | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Levy "spearmen" | Before 1100AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 4 | 1/2 | 10 | 10-40 |
| Levy archers | | | | | | Bow | - | 3 | 1/2 | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|----|--------|------|
| To-bang guard | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 11 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | | |
| Tae-gak guard | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Military school trainees | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| Nomad nobles | Before 1100AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| Other nomad cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 11 | | |
| Foot nomads | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Peasants | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-12 |
| Battle wagons | Before 1300AD | Battle wagons | - | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 17 | 2 or 4 | 0-4 |
| Handgunners | From 1350AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Rocket launchers | From 1300AD | Light artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light artillery | - | 17 | 2 | 0-4 |
| Fortified Camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mongol allies (only in 1219 AD) - see Mongol Conquest list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Jin allies (Only before 1234 AD) – See Jurchen-Jin list | | | | | | | | | | |

| Koryo Korean Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------|-----|--------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | | | | | Close Combat |
| Sungi guard | | Cataphracts | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | | | | | 18 | | | |
| Kwang-gun cavalry | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | |
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun spearmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| Kwang-gun troops in mixed battle groups | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | |
| | | | | | | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | | |
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun archers or crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| Singi-gun cavalry | | From 100AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | |
| Sinbugun 'spearmen' | | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 8 | 6-8 | |
| Sinbugun in mixed formations | | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 8 | 1/2 | 6-8 |
| | | | | | | | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | |
| Sinbugun archers or crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow or Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |

Early Hungarian

In 1000AD the Magyar High Prince, Vajk, of the Árpád dynasty, accepted Christianity. He was recognised as King of Hungary by Pope Sylvester II and ruled under his Christian name of István (Stephen) I. Under his successors Hungary developed a feudal economy and expanded its territories, becoming one of the leading powers in south-eastern Europe. The last king of the Árpád line, András III, died in 1301AD. Following a protracted succession struggle, the Angevin Charles I Robert ascended the throne. Under Charles I Robert (1308AD – 1342AD) Hungary was successfully allied with Poland against the Holy Roman Empire, Austria and Bohemia.

This list covers Hungarian armies from 1000AD to 1440AD.

Troop Notes

Though primarily equipped with lance and shield, Hungarian armoured cavalry continued to carry bows and operate as heavy horse archers, when necessary, until the end of the 12th century.

Many western knights, principally Germans and Italians, were employed as mercenaries and subsequently granted Hungarian lands especially in the east of the kingdom. They gradually became absorbed into the Hungarian nobility, who themselves came to adopt their equipment and tactics. The king's household and court were the first to do so.

Classification of Szeklers presents some difficulty, so we have given a choice of interpretations.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Hungarian nobles.
- Only one allied contingent can be used except for the Crusade of Nicopolis special campaign, when both Wallachian allies and Crusader Allies must be used. Crusader knights are used in addition to the 'Hungarian and other Western knights and sergeants' in the main list.

| Early Hungarian | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|--|------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hungarian nobles and gentry | Before 1200AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-20 |
| | Before 1060AD | | | | | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 17 | | 0-10 | |
| Hungarian and other western knights and sergeants | From 1060Ad to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1150AD | | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 26 | | | |
| Hungarian, Pecheneg (Bessi), Cuman, Jazyges or other horse archers | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 4-12 | 12-40 |
| | | Cavalry | | | | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | 4-32 | |
| Szeklers | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | | | | | Protected | Superior | | | |
| | | | Average | Undrilled | Bow | 11 | | 4-6 | | | |
| | | Unprotected | Average | | | 10 | | | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 11 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 10 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 10 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Croat nobles | From 1097AD to 1149AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | | |
| Teutonic order knights | From 1211AD to 1225AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 29 | | | |
| Hungarian, Slav, Croat or Serb spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Hungarian, Slav, Croat or Serb foot archers | | Medium foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-24 | 0-24 |
| | | Light Foot | | Poor | | | | 3 | | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 5 | | | |
| Croat axemen | From 1097AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-16 |
| Vlach Foot | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |

| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------|------------------|----------|-----------|---|--------------------|----|-----|------|------|
| Teutonic allies (only from 1221AD to 1223AD) – see Teutonic Knights list (ignore Teutonic start date) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Anatolian Turcoman allies (only from 1239 AD to 1300 AD) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Early Polish allies (only from 1017 AD to 1116 AD) – see Book 2: Early Polish allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Later Polish allies (only from 1370 AD to 1382 AD) – see Later Polish list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rus Allies (only from 1019 AD to 1046 AD) – see Book 2: Rus list | | | | | | | | | | |
| German city allies (only from 1245 AD to 1307 AD) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Paduan allies (only from 1358 AD to 1380 AD) – see Condotta Italian list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Moldavian or Wallachian allies – see Moldavian or Wallachian allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cuman allies (only from 1238AD to 1394AD) – see Cuman list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | | |
| Crusade of Nicopolis in 1396 AD | | | | | | | | | | |
| Crusader allied commander | | Field Commander | | | | | 30 | 1 | | |
| Hungarian, Slav, Croat or Serb spearmen | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 4-10 | 8-16 |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Wallachian allies must also be fielded. Crusader allied commander can only command (and must command all) crusader knights | | | | | | | | | | |

| Early Hungarian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hungarian nobles and gentry | Before 1200AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 3-8 | |
| | Before 1060AD | | | | | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 17 | | | |
| Hungarian and other western knights and sergeants | From 1060AD to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | | |
| | From 1150AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4 | | |
| Hungarian, Pecheneg (Bessi), Cuman, Jazyges or other horse archers | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 4-16 |
| | | Cavalry | | | | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | | |
| Szeklers | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 11 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 10 | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 11 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 10 | | | |

Taifa Andalusian

This list covers the armies of the Muslim Taifa kingdoms of the Iberian Peninsula from 1017 AD until the Almoravid conquest of Murcia in 1172 AD. Armies must be designated as one of the following:

- Toledo from 1017 AD until 1085 AD
- Badajoz from 1017 AD until 1150 AD
- Zaragoza from 1017 AD until 1110 AD
- Seville from 1023 AD to 1091 AD
- Murcia from 1145 AD to 1172 AD
- Valencia from 1094 AD until 1101 AD

Troop Notes

Almogavari, were border soldiers, better known as Almughavars by non-Moslems. They were used by Ibn Mardanish to defend the Taifa of Murcia, together with other mercenaries including Castilians, Aragonese and Franks.

“Slav” foot comprised the descendants of former mamluk (slave) foot of Christian origin. Following the collapse of the Andalusian Caliphate they ruled several Taifa kingdoms, including Valencia, Tortosa, Denia and Balears.

Most of these were small and lacked substantial armies. Following the capture of Valencia by the Taifa of Toledo in 1074 AD, many fled to Murcia. El Cid's mesnaderos were a veteran body that fought together for many years. They may therefore deserve Drilled status.

Building a customised list using our army points

Commanders should be depicted as Arab or Andalusian cavalry, or, if “The Cid” as El Cid mesnaderos

- “The Cid” and El Cid mesnaderos can only be used by the Taifa of Zaragoza (only from 1081 AD to 1086 AD) or the Taifa of Valencia
- El Cid mesnaderos can only be used if the C-in-C is “The Cid”.
- Minima marked * only apply if any Christians or El Cid mesnaderos are used or if “The Cid” is the CinC
- Almogavari must be classified as all impact foot or all offensive spearmen. They cannot be used with Christian troops.

| Taifa Andalusian | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------|---|-------------|----------------------|-----------|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|---|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | "The CID" | Inspired Commander/Field Commander (Zaragosa or Valencia) | | | | | 80/40 | | 1 | | | |
| | Others | Inspired Commander/Field Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Andalusian or Berber cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | | 6-12 | 14-36 | |
| | Cavalry | | | | | | | | | 8-30 | | |
| Andalusian spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 2/3 or all | 8-12 | 16-48 | 24-72 | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | | | | | | 6 |
| Supporting archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | | Drilled or Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 1/3 or none | | | | |
| Seperatley deployed archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | | |
| | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 8-24 | | |
| | | | Undrilled | 6 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | | |
| Christian spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | | *8-16 | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Andalusian or other horse archers | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4 | | 0-4 | | |
| Andalusian levy spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 2/3 or all | 8-12 | 0-24 | | |
| Supporting archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | Bow | - | 3 | 1/3 or none | | | | |
| Black spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | | |
| Berber spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 2/3 or all | 8-12 | 0-16 | | |
| Supporting archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | Bow | - | 3 | 1/3 or none | | | | |
| Berber javelinmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | | |
| Slingers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | | | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | 24 | | | 0-1 | | |

| Only Taifa of Seville from (1023 AD to 1091) AD or Taifa Of Zaragoza (From 1017 AD to 1110 AD) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|-----|--------------------------|----|-----|-------|
| Arab cavalry | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | 0-10 |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 13 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 10 | | |
| Christian mercenaries | Before 1051AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 17 | 4 | 0-4 |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 13 | | |
| | From 1051AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 23 | | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 18 | | |
| El Cid mesnaderos | | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 25 | 4 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 23 | | |
| Only Taifa of Valencia (From 1094 AD to 1101 AD) - The CinC must be "The Cid" | | | | | | | | | | |
| El Cid mesnaderos | | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 25 | 4 | 4 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 23 | | |
| Aragonese knights | | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Christian archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Only Taifa of Murcia (From 1145 AD to 1172 AD) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cristian Mercenaries | Before 1151AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | *4-10 |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 18 | | |
| | From 1151AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 21 | 4-6 | |
| Almogavari | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | | Offensive Spearmen | | | |
| "Slav" foot | | Heavy Foot or Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Almoravid Allies (Only from 1039AD to 1146AD – any except Murcia) – see Book2: Muslim North African and Sicily list.) | | | | | | | | | | |

| Taifa Andalusian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|------|-------------|------|
| Allied Commander | Field Commander/ Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Andalusian or Berber cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | | 0-6 | 6-16 |
| | Cavalry | | | | | | | | | 4-12 | |
| Andalusian spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 2/3 or all | 8-12 | 8-24 | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | |
| Supporting archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | | Drilled or Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 1/3 or none | | | |
| Seperatley deployed archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-6 | 8-32 |
| | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-24 | | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | |

Medieval Spanish and Portuguese

This list covers the Christian armies of the kingdoms of Spain from 1037AD and the Kingdom of Portugal from its foundation in 1139AD. The kingdoms of Aragon and Catalonia were united in 1137 AD, and the list covers the subsequent Aragonese kingdom until 1479AD when it united with Castile. The kingdoms of Castile and Leon were united (finally) in 1230AD and the list covers the united Castilian kingdom until 1500AD.

Armies must be selected as being from:

- Aragon (1037 AD to 1479 AD)
- Catalonia 1037AD to 1137AD)
- Castile (1037AD to 1500AD)
- Portuguese (from 1139AD to 1500AD)

Troop Notes

Early armies had a very strong Frankish influence mixed with local developments. Drilled militia from the cities used pikes from the 13th century, but deep formations were not introduced until the arrival of foreign mercenaries in the second half of the 15th century. Therefore, we classify them as Offensive Spearmen until deep formations were used. Almughavars were recruited from the border lands and are described as lightly armoured and equipped with a couple of iron darts called "sagetes" or "escones", similar to the Roman pilum or the ancient Spanish soliferrum, a short sword or dagger, and a spear. Their fighting style relied on the effect of missiles combined with a fierce charge. Classification presents a problem; therefore, we give a choice of classification. While there were probably at least some light horse from quite early on, they were not called jinetes until their numbers greatly expanded during the 13th century. They can include both Muslims, mostly Berbers, and Christians.

Caballeros villanos were non-noble knights supplied by the cities as a core part of their militia forces. In areas reconquered from the Moors they may have retained their customary fighting style. A proportion of the army's spearmen, crossbowmen or archers can be Mudejars (Moslems) or Jews conscripted from the formerly Moslem areas. This does not affect their classification. French allies in 1365 represent Bertrand du Guesclin's Free Companies, hired by Pere of Aragon for his war against Pedro of Castile. During the Civil War of 1462 to 1472 between King Juan II and the Catalan government of the Generalitat, French troops sent by Louis XI helped the king until 1466, when the Generalitat offered the Catalan crown to René d'Anjou and Louis XI changed sides.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- The minima marked * apply only if no almughavars are used or from 1400 AD.
- The minimum marked ** applies if any almughavars are used or before 1150 AD.
- A French allied commander can only command French or Free Company troops and must command all of them.
- An English allied commander can only command English or Free Company troops and must command all of them.
- Mounted French or Free Company men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Undrilled, Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- From 1365 AD Portuguese feudal knights can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Undrilled, Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- French, English or Free Company minima in the Special Campaigns only apply if the Special campaign option is used.

| Medieval Spanish and Portuguese | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|--|------------------------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|--------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal knights | | Before 1050AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-24 | 8-32 |
| | | | | Average | | | | | 12 | | 8-32 | |
| | | From 1050Ad to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-24 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | | 16 | | 8-32 | |
| | | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-18 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 6-24 | |
| Mercenary men-at-arms | From 1410AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-12 | 6-24 | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | 0-32 | *12-40 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| City militia or mercenaries | | From 1350AD to 1449AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | | 0-12 |
| | | From 1200AD | | Protected | | | | 8 | | | | |
| | | | From 1450AD (not Portuguese) | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | | 8-12 |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|---|-------|------|----------------------|--------|
| Almughavars | Aragon before 1150AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 6-24 | **6-24 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | - | All Offensive Spearmen or all Impact Foot Swordsmen | 7 | | **6-18 | |
| | Aragon from 1150AD to 1400AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | | | 10 | 6-8 | |
| Crossbowmen | Before 1150AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | Drilled | | | | 7 | | | 6-24 | | | |
| Archers | Portuguese from 1350AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 6-24 |
| | Unprotected | | 5 | | | | | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Caballeros, Villanos or Cavalls Alforrats | Any date | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | From 1050AD | Knights | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | | |
| Jinetes, Basque, or Berber light horse | Any date | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | From 1300AD | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | From 1150AD | Light Horse | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Military Order knights | From 1137AD to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 25 | 4-6 | Up to 1 battle group | |
| | From 1150AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | | | | 29 | 3-4 | | |
| | | | | | | | | Elite | | | |
| Military Order spearmen | From 1137AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Armoured | 9 | | | | | | | | |
| Military Order crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Skirmishing Infantry | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | | | |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | | | | |
| Handgunners | From 1400AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Artillery | From 1350AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Taifa Andalusian allies (only Aragon and Catalonia) before 1100 AD – see Taifa Andalusian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Aragonese allies (only Castile from 1136 AD to 1476 AD) – see Medieval Spanish and Portuguese list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Portuguese allies (only Castile from 1141 AD to 1476 AD) – see Medieval Spanish and Portuguese list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Granadine allies (only Castile after 1238 AD) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Marinid allies (only Castile from 1270 AD to 1350 AD) – see Book 2: Muslim North African and Sicily list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Castilian allies (only Portugal from 1474 AD to 1476 AD) – see Medieval Spanish and Portuguese list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Majorca Crusade 1113 AD to 1115 AD (Aragon only) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pisan allies – see Communal Italian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Conquest of Saragossa 1118 AD (Aragon only) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| French crusader allies – see Medieval French list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Aragon in 1465 AD or Castile from 1350 AD to 1390 AD | | | | | | | | | | | |
| French allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| French or Free Company men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 4-8 | | |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | | |
| Dismounted French or Free Company men-at-arms | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 15 | 4-6 | | | |
| | | | Average | | | | 11 | 6-8 | | | |
| French or Free Company crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 6-8 | | |
| Only Portugal from 1365 AD to 1390 AD | | | | | | | | | | | |
| English allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| English or Free Company men-at-arms | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 17 | 4-8 | 4-8 | | |
| | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 14 | | | | |
| | | | Average | | | | 10 | | | | |
| English longbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 6-12 | | |
| Free company crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6 | 0-6 | | |
| Field defences – abatis or trenches | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-20 | |
| Catalonian civil war between Juan II and the Generalitat from 1462AD to 1472AD | | | | | | | | | | | |
| French allies – see Ordonnance French list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NB. Ordonnance French allies cannot be used with superior Feudal knights after 1466AD | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Medieval Spanish and Portuguese Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Feudal knights | Before 1050AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 12 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1050Ad to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 4-10 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-6 | |
| Mercenary men-at-arms | Only from 1410AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 4-6 | 0-18 | *6-24 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| City militia or mercenaries | From 1350AD to 1449AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-6 | |
| | From 1200AD | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | | |
| | From 1450AD (not Portuguese) | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| Almughavars | Aragon before 1150AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | All Offensive Spearmen or all Impact Foot Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | | | | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| | Aragon from 1150AD to 1400AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | | | | 10 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | From 1150AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Archers | Portuguese from 1350AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |

Late Heian to Muromachi Japanese

This list covers Japanese armies in the late Heian period from 1040 AD to 1185 AD, through the Kamakura shogunate (1185 AD – 1333 AD), the brief "Kenmu Restoration" period (1333AD - 1336AD), the Nambokucho period (1336AD – 1392AD) and the early Muromachi period (1392AD – 1500AD). Armies were still small but increased in size dramatically towards the end of the period. Armies were led by powerful local warlords, daimyo, fighting either for the Imperial court, the Kamakura shogunate or on their own behalf, and based round relatives and retainers fighting as mounted archers.

Troop Notes

During most of this period the bushi fought on horseback except when fighting in boats or behind fortifications. Towards the end of the period, especially during the Onin War of 1467AD- 1468AD, fought in the streets of Kyoto, which ushered in the Sengoku jidai, (the Age of the Country at War), bushi increasingly fought on foot. Bushi bases can also include those followers whose equipment is close to, or indistinguishable from, actual bushi.

Infantry were the followers of the mounted warriors and were equipped to a lower standard, although the better armoured neared the level of the mounted troops. The naginata is first mentioned around the middle of the 12th century and largely replaced the earlier hoko spears. Numbers of foot followers were in the region of between 2 and 3 per mounted warrior. Throughout the period the bushi mainly fought as horse archers and were closely supported by their followers on foot who carried a mixture of bows, staff weapons – especially the naginata – and swords. Whilst the naginata was very popular we feel that the mixture of melee weapons within such groups is best represented by the Pole Arm classification. The numbers of bows, mainly used by the bushi was a minority, and so only justified Bow* rather than Bow classification.

From 1335 AD groups of followers led by bushi were armed with 4-metre-long spears, yari. At the same time a variety of long sword and similar weapons, including the nagamaki and nodachi, became popular for fighting on foot. The first use of the word ashigaru, initially referring to groups of follower-grade foot archers, appears about the same time. By the end of the period dismounted bushi and followers were also using the yari, however, other weapons such as long swords and naginata were also used and we treat such mixed weaponry as Pole Arm.

Classification of the mixed bushi and follower groupings is tricky. We represent mixed battle groups of bushi and foot followers as Medium Foot, whether or not the bushi are themselves mounted. Prior to 1467 AD, such battle groups can depict a mixture of mounted bushi and foot follower figures. If using mounted Bushi, we recommend that the mounted bushi figures are based on double depth medium foot bases each with 1 or 2 mounted bushi figures and 2 or 3 foot followers with mixed weaponry. It is also appropriate to depict the bushi in mixed battle groups as dismounted and use normal depth medium foot bases throughout. When detached bushi are used, the remaining detached followers are downgraded from pole arms to light spear to reflect their reduced fighting ability due to lack of leadership.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as bushi or Daimyo's personal retainers.
- A Japanese ally commander's contingent must conform to the Late Heian to Muromachi Japanese Allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Daimyo's personal retainers can always dismount as Elite, Medium Foot, Heavily Armoured, Drilled or Undrilled (as mounted type) – Bow, Swordsmen
- From 1467AD mounted detached bushi can always dismount as Superior, Armoured, Undrilled Medium Foot – Bow*, Skilled Swordsmen.
- Taira and Minamoto cannot be allies for each other
- Field fortifications minimum marked * only applies if any detached bushi and followers are used.
- Before 1335AD, if 8 or more fortifications are selected, 8 of them can be sacrificed to upgrade the Supply Camp to a Fortified Camp. This exchange must be announced at the time that the camp is placed.

| Late Heian to Muromachi Japanese | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|--|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Japanese allied commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Bushii and followers with high proportion of followers | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Pole Arm | 10 | 6-8 | 6-36 | 12-72 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | 6-36 | | |
| Detached Bushii before 1186 AD | Minamoto | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 4-16 | 4-24 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | 0-8 | | |
| | Taira | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | 4-16 | | |
| | Others | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | 0-8 | | |
| Detached Bushii | From 1186AD to 1466AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 4-16 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|----------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|------|--------------------|----|------|--------------------------------------|------|
| Detached Bushi | Only from 1467AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 6-24 |
| | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Skilled Swordsmen | 14 | 6-8 | 6-24 | |
| | | | | | | - | Offensive Spearmen | 13 | | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | - | Pole Arm | 13 | | | |
| Detached Followers | Any Date | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Light spear | 6 | 8-12 | 1-2 bases per base of detached bushi | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Regrade detached followers as yari-armed ashigaru from 1335AD | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | Any BG of detached followers | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | |
| Further upgrade yari-armed ashigaru as armoured after 1467AD | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Daimyo's personal retainers | | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 22 | 2-4 | Up to 1 battle group | |
| | | | | | Drilled | | | 23 | | | |
| Skirmishers with bow | Only Taira before 1186AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | Others | | | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Ashigaru with portable shields | Only from 1335AD | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 6 | 0-12 | |
| | Only from 1467AD | | Protected | Average | | | | 6 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | Poor | 4 | | | | | | | |
| Conscripts, badly equipped followers or inji 'ruffians' | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| Armed ladies and boys to guard camp | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 4 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Palisade fieldworks | Only Before 1335AD | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | *4-16 | |
| | Only From 1335AD | | | | | | | | | 0-8 | |
| Fortified camp | Only Before 1335AD | | | | | | | 24 | | 0 | |
| | Only From 1335AD | | | | | | | | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Japanese Warrior Monk allies | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Late Heian to Muromachi Japanese | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|------|-----|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| <i>Bushi and followers with high proportion of followers</i> | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Pole Arm | 10 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-24 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | 0-12 | | |
| Detached bushi before 1186 AD | Minamoto | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | 0-4 | | |
| | Taira | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-4 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | 0-8 | | |
| | Others | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | | | |
| Detached Bushi | From 1186AD to 1466AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 13 | | | | |
| | Only from 1467AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Bow* | Skilled Swordsmen | 14 | | 6-8 | | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | - | Offensive Spearmen | 13 | | | | |
| | | | | | | - | Pole Arm | 13 | | | | |
| Detached Followers | Any Date | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Light spear | 6 | 6-8 | 1-2 bases per base of detached bushi | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| Regrade detached followers as yari-armed ashigaru from 1335 AD | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | Any BG of detached followers | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Further upgrade yari-armed ashigaru as armoured after 1467 AD | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | Up to 1 battle group | | |

Norman

This list covers the armies of the Duchy of Normandy from 1041 AD until the effective end of English resistance to the Norman conquest in 1071 AD. The Normans in Italy are covered by the Italo-Norman and Sicilian list.

In 1066 Duke William the Bastard invaded England where he defeated and killed King Harold at the Battle of Hastings. He was subsequently crowned King of England, though he also remained Duke of Normandy owing (increasingly theoretical) fealty to the King of France.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as milites.
- Mounted Milites can always dismount as Heavy Foot, Armoured, Superior or Average (as mounted type), Undrilled, Offensive Spearmen.
- No more than 1/2 the bases of milites (whether mounted or dismounted) may be fielded as superior.
- Bases of elite milites are deducted from the total of upgraded veteran (superior) milites. They may not dismount.
- During Duke William's invasion of England, a minimum of 1/3 and a maximum of 2/3 of milites must be selected and paid for as dismounted.

| Norman | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|---------------------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | |
| Milites | Knights | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | 16-48 |
| Upgrade Milites as Veteran | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | Up to 1/2 of bases |
| Further upgrade Veteran Milites as Bodyguards | Knights | Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 4 | Up to 1 BG |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | |
| Spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | 0-32 |
| Foot archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 |
| | Medium Foot | | | | | | 6 | | |
| Crossbowmen | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 6 | | |
| Peasants | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 8-12 | 0-12 |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | |
| French allies – see Book 2: Early Medieval European list (before 1051 AD) or Medieval French list (from 1051 AD) | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Duke William's Invasion of England in 1066 AD | | | | | | | | | |
| Downgrade milites lacking horses to: | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 13 | 6-8 | 1/3 to 2/3 of bases |
| | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | |
| Breton cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 |

| Norman Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------|----------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Milites | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 6-16 |
| | | | | | | | | | 8-20 |

Italo-Norman

The Normans first appeared in Southern Italy in 1017AD as mercenaries fighting for the Lombard princes against the Byzantines in Italy. In 1030AD the Norman leader Ranulf Drengot was granted the County of Aversa. Encouraged by this success more Normans arrived in Italy. They fought as mercenaries for the Byzantines against the Arabs in Sicily but gradually expanded their own territories fighting against the Byzantines.

The de Hauteville family played a big part in the Norman success in the region. William became their first count in 1042AD, succeeded by his brother Drogo. Another brother Humphrey defeated Papal forces at the battle of Civitate in 1053AD. When Humphrey died, he was succeeded by another brother Robert Guiscard and he with yet another brother Roger finally expelled the last Byzantine forces from Italy in 1071AD and conquered the last Lombard principalities by 1077AD.

Arab Sicily was invaded 1061AD and the main Arab army was defeated the Battle of Misilmeri in 1068AD, Palermo was captured in 1072AD and Roger was invested as Count of Sicily. Count Roger finally completed the conquest of Sicily between 1085AD and 1091AD.

In 1081AD Guiscard, together with his eldest son Bohemond, shipped his army across the Adriatic to invade the Byzantine Empire and defeated the Byzantines at Dyrrhachium.

This list covers the armies of the Normans in Italy and Sicily from 1041AD to 1154AD.

Troop Notes

Following the conquest of Sicily, large numbers of Saracen troops were employed mainly as bowmen. Certain Muslim volunteers (Rizico) fought not for pay but for the spoils of war from the dead.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Knights
- Knights and Sergeants can always dismount as Armoured, Elite, Superior or Average (as mounted type) undrilled, Heavy Foot – Offensive Spearmen.

| Italo - Norman | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub- Commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal Knights and Sergeants | | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 4-18 | 8-24 |
| Italian Communal Knights and Sergeants | | | | Average | | | | 16 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 6-24 | 6-24 |
| | | | | Poor | Undrilled | | | 4 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| Saracen archers | From 1072AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 6-12 | 8-16 |
| | Before 1072AD | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 5 | 8 | 8-16 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Body Guard Feudal Knights | | Knights | Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Rizico Saracens From 1091AD | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| Saracen Cavalry From 1091 | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 12 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | | Drilled | | | 13 | | | |
| Flemish and other Mercenary Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | Drilled | | | 9 | | | |
| Greeks | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | Light foot | Unprotected | | | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 0-16 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | 0-8 | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | Undrilled | | | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Peasants | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Lombard Allies (only before 1053AD) - see book 2: Later Lombard allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sicilian Aghlabid allies only in 1061AD -see Book2: Muslim North African and Sicily list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Italo – Norman Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-----|
| Allied Commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Feudal Knights and Sergeants | | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 4-8 | 4-8 |
| Italian Communal Knights and Sergeants | | | | Average | | | | 16 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Saracen archers | From 1072AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | Before 1072AD | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 5 | 8 | | |

Medieval French

This list covers the armies of Capetian and Valois France from 1050 AD to the Ordonnance reforms of 1445 AD. During a great deal of this period the power of the King of France was often overshadowed, or at least curtailed, by that of his nominal vassals. This was even the case when the survival of France was at stake such as at times during the 100 Years War when the princes of the blood were in dispute and even cooperated with the English. However, by the end of the period France was more or less united and had emerged as one of the most powerful nations in Europe.

The list also covers the armies of the Valois Dukes of Burgundy from 1363AD when the 4th son of Jean II, Philippe, was granted the Duchy as an apanage of the crown, until Charles the Bold's ordonnance of 1471 AD. The Dukes of Burgundy acted independently despite being subjects of the French crown, even allying with the English from 1420AD to 1435AD.

Troop Notes

Contemporary illustrations suggest that in the early part of the period covered by the list that infantry was armed with heavy cutting weapons and swords as often as spears. However, it is likely that they fought in mixed bodies. We treat such mixed bodies as Spearmen. Brigans were armed with a variety of pole arms which we classify as Heavy Weapon. Voulgiers were more consistently armed with weapons suitable for cutting and thrusting and so we classify them as Pole Arm.

Following the Battle of Crecy in 1346 AD the French cavalry started to imitate the English and fight on foot as a way of avoiding as much of the effect of the massed longbows fielded by the English as they could. Thus, we allow these to be taken as infantry from this date. However, as this was not universal, and they could still fight wholly mounted at times, the option to field them as mounted troops (albeit ones who can optionally dismount) remains.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- Armies must be either French or Burgundian. Burgundian armies may have French allied commanders.
- French ally-commanders' contingents must conform to the Medieval French allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Only 1 battle group of Elite knights (whether mounted or dismounted) can be used.
- From 1347AD Knights and sergeants can always dismount as Elite or Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Undrilled, Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- From 1347 Mercenary men-at-arms can always dismount as Average, Heavily Armoured, Drilled, Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Only one of the two minima marked * need apply from 1347 AD. The player can choose which.
- Minima marked ** do not apply to Burgundian armies from 1420 AD.
- From 1465 AD Burgundian armies cannot have more Superior Knights bases than Average ones.

| Medieval French | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------|--------|--|--|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-2 | | | |
| French allied commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-2 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Knights and sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 4 | 0-4 | 8-36 | | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 23 | 4-6 | 0-16 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 8-24 | | | |
| | From 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 30 | 3 or 4 | 0-4 | | | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 26 | 3-4 | 0-20 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | *8-24 | | | |
| Downgrade knights and sergeants | Burgundian from 1420AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | Up to 2/3 of bases | | | |
| Dismounted knights and men-at-arms | From 1347AD | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 18 | 4 | 0-4 | | | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 15 | 6-8 | 0-20 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 11 | | *8-20 | | | |
| Feudal spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | 0-24 | **8-40 | | |
| Mercenary spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | | | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | | | |
| Communal militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | | | | 5 | 6-8 | 0-24 | | | |
| Brigands | From 1330AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 7 | 6-8 | **8-16 | | | |
| Pavisiers | From 1350AD to 1399AD | | Heavily Armoured | | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 12 | | | | | |
| Voultiers | From 1400AD | | Armoured | | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | | | | | |
| French crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 6-16 | | | |
| Communal militia crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | | | | | |
| Picard longbowmen | Burgundian from 1420AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | - | 8 | 6-8 | 6-24 | | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow BG | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | All longbow BGs or none | | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|----|------|------|------|
| Sergeants or valets de guerre | From 1150AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Mercenary men-at-arms | from 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Italian mercenaries | French from 1422AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | | |
| Archers | Before 1150 AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 0-16 |
| | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Spanish crossbowmen | From 1330AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Genoese crossbowmen | From 1150AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Low Countries spearmen | Only before 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | | |
| Low Countries pikemen | Burgundian from 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Handgunners | | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 6 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Gascon or Breton javelinmen | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Ribauds and peasants | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| Light guns | from 1350AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | 0-4 |
| | Burgundian from 1430AD | | | | | | | | | 0-4 | |
| Heavy guns | From 1350AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Catalan allies (Only from 1070 AD to 1213 AD) – see Medieval Spanish and Portuguese list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scots allies (only from 1418 AD to 1429 AD) – see Medieval Scottish (in France) list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| English allies (only Burgundians from 1420 AD to 1435 AD) – see Late Plantagenet English (Continental) list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Albigenian Crusade in 1213 AD | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Catalano-Aragonese knights | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 4-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | | 4-6 | |
| Almughavars | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 10 | | | |
| No Genoese, Gascons or Bretons can be used and at least 2 battle groups of the above options must be fielded. | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Medieval French Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Knights and sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 4-12 |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | | 0-8 |
| Downgrade unskilled knights and sergeants | Burgundian from 1420AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | Up to 2/3 of bases |
| Dismounted knights and men-at-arms | From 1347AD | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 15 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 11 | | 0-8 |
| Feudal spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Brigans | From 1330AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 7 | 6-8 | **6-12 |
| Pavisiers | From 1350AD to 1399AD | | Heavily Armoured | | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 12 | | |
| Voultiers | From 1400AD | | Armoured | | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | | |
| French crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6 | 0-6 |
| Communal militia crossbowmen | | | Protected | Poor | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | | |
| Picard longbowmen | Burgundian from 1420AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | - | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow BG | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | All longbow BGs or none |

Early Medieval German

This list covers the armies of the German Kings/Emperors, those of the more powerful free cities, the first city leagues (Hanseatic League, Wendian Alliance, Ladbergener City League) and ecclesiastical armies, from 1050 AD to 1300 AD.

It was common for Imperial armies to include feudal contingents (usually from the personal holdings of the emperor) as well as ecclesiastical and city contingents. Contingents from other princes of the empire did occur but were not usual, as most of them were not interested in a strong emperor and had no obligations to send troops, unlike the princes of the church. Troops from the free cities of the empire were usually not required to serve more than half a day's march away from the city.

Troop Notes

Ministeriales were originally "unfree" *milites* who held no land in their own right, and could be granted (or even sold) by one lord to another. Their status gradually rose, however, so that by the mid-13th century they were effectively part of the feudal nobility. Moreover, even in the earlier period, there is no evidence to suggest that their performance differed from that of the feudal nobility. Imperial *ministeriales* were in effect all *ministeriales* 'belonging' to the emperor. We use the term here to single out those *ministeriales* who were kept together by the Staufer Kings and Emperors as sort of a standing force.

Konstaflers were urban knights, rich burghers and their followers. While generally well equipped they were rarely willing to take any risks.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- German allied commanders' contingents must conform to the Medieval German allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Knights can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Armoured or Heavily Armoured (as mounted type), Undrilled or Drilled (as mounted type), Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Separately deployed sergeants and Free Canton allies cannot be used with Hungarian allies.
- Brabanzonen and similar mercenaries cannot be used with Hungarian allies.
- Hungarians cannot be used with Swiss.

| Early Medieval German | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------|--|------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------|-------------|------|--|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly, Woodland | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| German allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ministeriales, or feudal knights and sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-18 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 8-32 | | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-18 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | | 8-32 | | |
| Mercenary knights | From 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-18 | | |
| Konstaflers | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| Mercenary or good quality militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 8-48 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 8 | | | | |
| Feudal or militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 8-10 | 8-48 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | |
| Mercenary Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | |
| Feudal or militia crossbowmen | From 1150AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 6-18 | | |
| | Unprotected | | Poor | 3 | | | | 0-8 | | | | |
| | | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Imperial ministeriales | 1152AD to 1254AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 3-4 | 0-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 29 | | | | |
| Teutonic knights | From 1226AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | From 1150AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 13 | | | | |
| Separately deployed sergeants | | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Brabanzonen, and similar mercenaries | | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 13 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Average | | | 9 | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------|------------------|----------|-----------|----------|--------------------|----|------|------|------|
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Free Canton allies (Only from 1106 AD) – Medieval Frisian or other Free Canton Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hungarian allies (Only in 1278 AD) – see Early Hungarian list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Imperial German armies in Italy from 1154 to 1235 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Italian town militia spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | |
| Italian contadini spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 8-12 | 0-24 | |
| Swabian schwertknechte | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 9 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Communal Italian allies – see Communal Italian list | | | | | | | | | | |
| No Teutonic knights, Konstafiers, Hanse Marines, Brabanzonen, Geldoni and similar mercenaries can be used. No allies except Italian Communal can be used. Foot minima do not apply to the main army. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Konradin at Tagliacozzo in 1268 AD | | | | | | | | | | |
| Italian, Sicilian and Castilian knights | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-12 | 8-16 |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-16 | |
| Castilian jinetes | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| No optional troops or allies can be used. Foot minima do not apply. | | | | | | | | | | |

| Early Medieval German Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Ministeriales, or feudal knights and sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Mercenary knights and sergeants | From 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Mercenary or good quality militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-18 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 8 | | | |
| Feudal or militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-10 | 0-18 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | |
| Mercenary Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 6-8 |
| Feudal or militia crossbowmen | From 1150AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | | | 3 | | | |

Later Medieval German

This list covers the armies later city leagues (Hanseatic League, 1st and 2nd Swabian Leagues, Lusatian League) and the Later German princes and nobles from 1300AD to 1499AD.

Troop Notes

.Hanse Marines were mercenaries employed by the Hanse cities mainly to be used in naval combat. They could also be deployed on land however. While they are described as well trained and equipped, we assume that they were not used to operating in large bodies, hence class them as Undrilled.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- German allied commanders' contingents must conform to the Medieval German allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Knights can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Undrilled or Drilled (as mounted type), Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- The minimum marked * is reduced to 4 after 1450AD

| Later Medieval German | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|--|------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly, Woodland | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | | |
| German allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | 0-1 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal or mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 4-12 | *8-18 |
| Mercenary knights and sergeants | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Konstaflers | Before 1340AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Mercenary or good quality militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 16-48 |
| Feudal or militia spearmen | | | Protected | | Undrilled | | | 6 | 6-10 | 8-48 | |
| Low Countries spearmen | Before 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 8 | 6-10 | 0-20 | |
| Landsknecht or Low countries Pikemen | From 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 12-32 | 12-32 |
| | | | Poor | 4 | | | | | | | |
| Halberdiers | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Polearms | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Landsnecht 'verlorene haufen' | From 1488AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 11 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Mercenary Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 6-24 |
| Feudal or militia crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 6-18 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| | | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Mounted handgunners | From 1480AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Firearm | Swordsmen | 13 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Lesser armed men=at=arms | From 1450AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Bidemhander wielders | Before 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 13 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-24 |
| | | | Average | 9 | | | | | | | |
| Hanse marines | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Free Canton spearmen | From 1340AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-24 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Handgunners | From 1375AD | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 6 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| War wagons | From 1425AD | Battle Wagons | - | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Pole Arm | 23 | 2-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | Light Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Light guns | From 1340AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | | |
| Heavy Guns | From 1375AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Danish allies (only before 1397AD – See Medieval Scandinavian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Low Countries allies (only before 1477AD – See Later Low Countries list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Swiss allies (only from 1385 AD to 1446 AD) – see Swiss list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Later Medieval German Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal or mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 4-8 | 4-8 |
| Mercenary knights and sergeants | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| Feudal or militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 8-16 | |
| Landsknecht or Low countries Pikemen | From 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-12 | 0-12 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Landsnecht 'verlorene haufen' | From 1488AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 6-8 | 0-6 | |
| Feudal or militia crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |

Communal Italian

This is the period during which the urban Italian republics (communes) established their autonomy. They did so by playing off the Pope against the Holy Roman Emperor. During the various disputes between these major powers, the Italian communes preserved their effective independence by supporting either the Pope or the Emperor. Those supporting the Pope came to be known as "Guelphs", while those supporting the emperor came to be known as "Ghibellines", although these terms were not in common use until the mid-13th century.

This list covers Italian Communal armies from 1050 AD to 1320 AD.

Troop Notes

Contadini were troops supplied by the rural districts surrounding the Italian towns.

Most "mercenary" knights in Communal armies prior to the first half of the 13th century were in fact Communal knights from other towns. They are included in the total of Communal knights.

Carroccios were wagons carrying a rectangular platform on which were placed the standard of city and an altar. Guarded by the bravest soldiers, they acted as rallying-points and as the repository of the city's honour - their loss being regarded as a humiliating calamity. They are best represented as part of the army's camp.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- Italian Communal allies form separate allied contingents. Troops used in such allied contingents are NOT deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.

| Communal Italian | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Contadini knights and sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | From 1150AD to 1199AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | | | | 26 | 3-4 | | | |
| | From 1200AD | | Heavily Armoured | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | | |
| Communal knights and sergeants | From 1100AD to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | 6-12 | | |
| | From 1150 AD | | Heavily Armoured | | | | | 18 | | | | |
| Mercenary knights and sergeants | From 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 21 | 4-6 | 0-12 | | |
| Town militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 12-48 | 18-96 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | 48 | | |
| Mercenary spearmen | From 1150AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | 6-24 |
| Contadini spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 6-10 | 6-48 | | |
| Crossbowmen | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 6-24 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 7 | | 6-18 | | |
| Pavisiers and crossbowmen | From 1200 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | | 0-18 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | From 1200 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4 | | | |
| Foot archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Axemen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Javelinmen | From 1200 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | |
| Carroccio, its defenders, and supply camp | | Fortified Camp | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Italian Communal allies (up to 2 contingents) – see Communal Italian list | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Communal Italian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Contadini knights and sergeants | Only before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | | 0-4 | |
| | From 1150AD to 1199AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | | | | 26 | 3-4 | | | |
| | Only from 1200 AD | | Heavily Armoured | Average | | | | 18 | 4 | | | |
| Communal knights and sergeants | from 1100AD to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | | 4-8 | |
| | Only from 1150AD | | Heavily Armoured | | | | | 18 | | | | |
| Mercenary knights and sergeants | Only from 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 21 | 4-6 | | | |
| Town militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | | 6-16 | 8-32 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Mercenary spearmen | Any date | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6 | | 0-6 | |
| Contadini spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 6-10 | | 0-16 | |
| Crossbowmen | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6 | | 0-6 | 0-8 |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| Pavisiers and crossbowmen | Only from 1200 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | | |

Scots Isles and Highlands

At the start of this period the Isles and much of the Highlands were under the control of the Norwegian Earl of Orkney. Norsemen and Scottish Gaels came to share a common culture. Internecine strife between rival heirs to the earldom, however, meant that the Earldom was often divided between rival claimants. By the mid-12th century, the Isle of Man and the Hebrides were independent, being united by Somerled in 1158 AD as the Kingdom of Mann and the Isles. Somerled's descendants became Clan MacDougall, which held most of Argyll and the Isles of Mull, Lismore, Jura, Tiree and Coll until the beginning of the 14th century when they lost most of their territory after opposing King Robert the Bruce, and Clan MacDonald, Lords of the Isles until the title was suppressed by King James IV of Scotland in 1493 AD.

This list covers the armies of the Scots Isles and Highlands from 1050 AD until 1493 AD.

Troop Notes

The commonest weapon of the Islesman was the two-handed axe, but the Lewis chessmen (c.1175 AD) and a proportion of later grave effigies show spear and sword instead. Later battle accounts suggest that the wealthier Highlanders were equipped with mail, bow, targe, sword and/or axe. Lesser followers, equipped only with targe, sword or knife made up the rear ranks.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Islesmen or Highlanders.

| Scots Isles and Highlands | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|------|
| Territory Types: Hilly, Mountains | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Islesmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 7 | 8-12 | 32-90 | |
| | | | | | | Offensive Spearmen | | | | |
| Upgrade Islesmen as veteran | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 10 | 6-8 | Up to 1/3 of bases | |
| | | | | | | Offensive Spearmen | | | | |
| Highlanders | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 8-48 |
| | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | 8-40 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scouts | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Irish mercenaries | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 5 | 6-8 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Galwegian allies (Only before 1161 AD) – Galwegian allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Viking allies (Only before 1266 AD) – see Book 2: Viking list - ignore the end date for the main list | | | | | | | | | | |

| Scots Isles and Highlands Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Islesmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 8-10 | 12-32 |
| Upgrade Islesmen as veteran | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | Up to 1/2 of bases |
| Highlanders | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Impact Foot, Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-16 |

Medieval Scots

In the second quarter of the 12th century King David I of Scotland supported the claim of his niece the Empress Matilda against King Stephen of England. He invaded northern England several times. In 1138 AD a pitched battle was fought at Northallerton against a local English force. The Scots were defeated with heavy losses. Over the rest of the period Scots forces entered England on many occasions. However, the main task of the Scottish Kings was to expand their control, which initially was confined to the lowlands, over the rest of Scotland. It was not until 1266 AD that King Magnus VI of Norway ceded the Western Isles to Scotland, and Orkney remained under Norwegian control until 1468 AD.

Significant battles against the English include victories at Loudon Hill (1307 AD), Bannockburn (1314 AD) and Otterburn (1388 AD); also defeats at Dupplin Muir (1332 AD), Halidon Hill (1333 AD), Neville's Cross (1346 AD) and Homildon Hill (1402 AD). Significant battles against Isles/Highland armies include a hard-fought draw at Harlaw (1411 AD) and a defeat at Inverlochy (1431 AD).

This list covers lowland Scots armies in the British Isles from 1052 AD to 1500 AD. Armies in France in the early C15th are covered by the Medieval Scots Army in France list.

Troop Notes

Scottish knightly armour development largely kept pace with English, though we allow for the possibility of a slight lag. For much of this period men-at-arms mostly fought on foot in the front ranks of the spearmen – they are assumed to be included among the spearmen. Scots contingents in France from 1418 AD were made up along similar lines to contemporary English armies and this appears to indicate a change in the structure of Scots armies and an increase in the importance of archery. This can probably be dated to the years following Homildon Hill. In France the men-at-arms fought dismounted and we assume that they would be supported by spearmen or similar. We assume that home armies would still contain a significant number of spearmen. We can find no evidence of Scots archers using stakes. The archery reforms rapidly collapsed after the death of James I in 1437 AD and armies reverted to mainly spearmen.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as mounted or dismounted knights.
- Mounted French men-at-arms can always dismount as Heavy Foot, Heavily Armoured, Superior, Undrilled, Pole Arm.

| Medieval Scots | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|--|------------------------------|----------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | | | | Close Combat |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 8-12 | 32-90 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | |
| Border Horse | Any date | Light Horse | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | | | | | | | | |
| | Only from 1300AD | Light Horse | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | | | | | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Knights, men-at-arms and sergeants | Only before 1200AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | |
| | Only from 1150AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | | | | 26 | 3-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | |
| | from 1403AD to 1437AD | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 15 | 4-8 | |
| | | | | | | | | 13 | | |
| Archers | Only before 1300AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | | |
| | Only from 1300AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | | |
| | from 1403AD to 1437AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-16 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | |
| Ribauds | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 6 | 0-6 |
| Light guns | Only from 1339 AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Bombards | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Pits or other traps | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-16 |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 |

| Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------|------------------|----------|-----------|----------|--------------------|----|-----|-----|
| Galwegian allies (only before 1162 AD) – see book2: Galwegian allies | | | | | | | | | |
| Isles and/or Highland allies – see Scots Isles and Highlands list | | | | | | | | | |
| Special campaigns | | | | | | | | | |
| Only in 1385 AD | | | | | | | | | |
| French men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 4 |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | | |
| | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 15 | 4 | |
| | | | Average | | | | 11 | | |
| French crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 4 | 0-4 |

| Medieval Scots Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-10 | 10-48 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | |
| Border Horse | Any date | Light Horse | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| | | Cavalry | | | | | | | | |
| | Only from 1300 AD | Light Horse | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | | | | | | | | |

Komnenan Byzantine

This list covers Byzantine armies from the aftermath of the defeat of Manzikert in 1071 AD until the capture of Constantinople by the Fourth Crusade in 1204 AD.

Following its disastrous defeat by the Seljuk Turks under Alp Arslan at Manzikert, and the subsequent civil wars, the Byzantine army was in disarray and had to be reconstituted often by recruiting mercenaries from any available source. Native troops still existed, but the significant proportion of the army was comprised of mercenaries. Latinikon were western knights.

Skythikon were mostly Pechenegs in the earlier part of the period, later mostly Cumans. Turkopouloi were Seljuk Turks or Turcomans or their descendants. Vardariots were Uzes or Magyars from Macedonia. Varangians were a mixture of Englishmen, Scandinavians and Rus.

Troop Notes

Although contemporary depictions (often of warrior saints) show many spearmen in metal armour, it is postulated, based on earlier Byzantine evidence, that this represents only the equipment of officers, rankers being mostly in non-metallic armour. Hence, we treat the spearmen as Protected.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should mostly be depicted as Tagmata heavy cavalry.
- The minimum marked * applies only if the emperor is present. Cataphracts may not be used unless the emperor is present.
- The minimum marked ** applies only if any foot is used.
- Sicilian Norman allies cannot be used with any other allies, and cannot include otherwise compulsory Saracen archers.

| Komnenan Byzantine | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------|--|---------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-------------|--------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Tagmata heavy cavalry | Before 1150AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Vardariots | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 8-24 |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | |
| Skythikon,or Turkopouloi | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 11 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | | Unprotected | 10 | | | | | | | |
| | | Latinikon or Mercenary Franks | Only before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 25 | 4-6 |
| Average | Undrilled | | | | | 16 | 4-8 | | | | |
| Only from 1150 AD | Knights | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Byzantine guard cavalry | Only before 1150 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | Only from 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 25 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 0-8 |
| Vardariotai guards | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Oikeioi | Before 1150AD | Cataphracts | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 24 | 4 | *0-4 | |
| Varangian guard and other Varangian units | | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 20 | 4-6 | 0-6 | *4-16 |
| | | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | | | | 17 | 6-8 | *4-12 | |
| | | | Armoured | | | | | 14 | | | |
| Vestiaritai | | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Byzantine archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | **8-18 |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | **6-18 | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 6 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Byzantine spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | **8-16 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | |
| Menlavatoi | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Peltasts | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-24 | |
| Infantry Skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | | | Sling | - | 4 | | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |

| Allies |
|--|
| Turkish allies – see Book 2: Seljuk Turk list |
| Cuman allies (only before 1114AD) – See Cuman list |
| Early Serbian allies (only from 1150 AD to 1180 AD) |
| Cilician Armenian allies |
| Crusader allies (only from 1138 AD to 1159 AD) – see Crusader list |
| Sicilian Norman allies – see Italo-Norman and Sicilian list |
| Hungarian allies (only from 1167 AD) – see Early Hungarian list |

| Komnenan Byzantine Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Tagmata heavy cavalry | Before 1150AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | | |
| Vardariots | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | |
| Skythikon,or Turkopouloi | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 11 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| Latinikon or Mercenary Franks | Before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 25 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 16 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |

Anglo-Norman and Early Plantagenet English

This list covers Anglo-Norman and English armies from 1072AD to 1272AD including those of the Angevin "Empire" in England and France from 1154AD to 1216AD.

Troop Notes

Contemporary illustrations suggest that infantry was armed with heavy cutting weapons and swords as often as spears. As it is probable that they fought in mixed bodies similar to the earlier Viking or Saxon shieldwall, we treat such mixed bodies as Spearmen. During the "Empire" period troops could equally be English or French in origin. In Henry III's reign most would be English. Welsh *archerii* were mounted Welsh archers. We do not accept the notion that they fought mounted. Irish troops were used in quite large numbers in Wales and Scotland in the 13th century, usually serving under their own kings.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- Before 1150AD Knights and sergeants can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Armoured, Undrilled, Heavy Foot, Offensive Spearmen.
- Welsh *equites* can always dismount as Average, Unprotected, Undrilled, Medium Foot - Offensive Spearmen.
- French or Navarrese allies cannot be used with any Welsh, Galwegians or Irish.
- No more than one allied contingent can be used.

| Anglo-Norman and Early Plantagenet English | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------|--|------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|-------|------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Knights and sergeants | Before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 2 | 0-2 | 10-32 | | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 23 | | | | 4-6 | 0-18 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | | | | |
| | From 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 30 | 2 or 3 | 0-3 | | | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 26 | | | | 3-4 | 0-18 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | | | | | |
| Foot sergeants, English freemen or town militia | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | 12-48 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | Drilled | | | 5 | | | | 8-12 | |
| Archers | Before 1150 AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | | 6-12 | | | |
| | From 1150 AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed sergeants or Marcher muntatores | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | | | |
| Mercenary spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | | | |
| Marcher Welsh foot | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | | |
| Mercenary knights | Before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 16 | | | | | |
| | From 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | | | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 18 | 4-6 | | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | From 1150 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| Welsh <i>equites</i> | | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| | | | Cavalry | Protected | | | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | | | | |
| Welsh <i>archerii</i> | | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Feudal or mercenary crossbowmen | | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | | | Drilled | | | 7 | | | | |
| Galwegian foot | | Only in Britain from 1150 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| Irish foot | | Only in Britain from 1242 AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | | | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | 5 | | | | |
| | | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | | |

| Allies |
|---|
| North Welsh allies – see Medieval Welsh list |
| South Welsh allies (only from 1150 AD) – see Medieval Welsh list |
| Viking allies (only before 1169 AD) – see Book 2: Viking list |
| Medieval Irish allies (only from 1242 AD) – see Medieval Irish list |
| Medieval Scots allies (only from 1150 AD) – see Medieval Scots list |
| French allies – see Medieval French list |

| Anglo-Norman and Early Plantagenet English Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Knights and sergeants | Before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Foot sergeants, English freemen and town militia | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | 6-20 | |
| | | | | Poor | Drilled | | | 5 | 8-12 | | |
| Archers | Before 1150 AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | 0-12 | | |
| | From 1150 AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |

Crusader

Following an appeal by the Byzantine Emperor Alexios Komnenos to the West for mercenaries, Pope Urban II, seeing a way to remove anarchic elements from Europe, preached the First Crusade in 1095 AD. The twin stated aims of the Crusade were to liberate the Holy Land from the Muslims and to aid the Eastern Christians. The response was greater than expected, and certainly out of all proportion to anything Alexios had anticipated.

The Crusade, despite the dubious motives of some of its leaders, and thanks in great part to disunity amongst its Muslim foes, was a resounding success, retaking Jerusalem in 1099 AD. Godfrey of Bouillon was elected King of Jerusalem. Raymond of Toulouse became Count of Tripoli. Godfrey's brother Baldwin had already made himself Count of Edessa with the help of local Armenian rebels. Bohemond remained Prince of Antioch. The shape of the Crusader states in Outremer was set. The challenge now would be to hold the lands that had been won.

This list covers the armies of the Crusades in the Holy Land from the start of the First Crusade in 1096 AD until the fall of Acre in 1291 AD.

Troop Notes

During the First Crusade the losses of horses was high and many of the knights were forced to fight on foot. As this was forced on them and not by choice, we represent this by battle groups of infantry rather than allowing the knights to dismount.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- The minimum marked * does not apply from 1098 AD to 1099 AD.
- The number of bases of crossbowmen cannot exceed the number of bases of spearmen.
- Only one ally contingent can be used.

| Crusader | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Crusader knights, sergeants and turcopoles | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-18 | 8-30 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | *8-30 | |
| | From 1098AD to 1099AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 13 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 9 | | 8-16 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-18 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | | 8-30 | |
| Military Order knights, sergeants and turcopoles | From 1130AD to 1149AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 25 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | | | 3-4 |
| Upgrade Military Order knights | From 1130AD to 1149 AD | Knights | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 28 | 4 | Up to 1 battle group | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 3-4 | | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 8 | 8-10 | 8-40 | 14-40 |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | 0-24 | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 6-24 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Military Order spearmen | From 1130AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 6-16 | 6-24 |
| Military Order crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Byzantine or separately deployed Crusader or Military Order turcopoles | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 11 | | | |
| | | | | | Drilled | | | 12 | | | |
| Crusader, Maronite or Syrian archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Pilgrims | Before 1130AD | Mob | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | - | 4 | 8-12 | 0-24 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |

| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------|-------------|-------------|---------|-----------|----------|--------------------|---|-----|---|-------------|
| Cilician Armenian allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Bedouin allies – see List Book 2: Bedouin Dynasties list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Komnenan Byzantine allies (Only from 1165 AD to 1170 AD) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Fatimid allies (only in 1167 AD) – see List Book 2: Fatimid Egyptian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Syrian States allies (only from 1100 AD) – see List Book 2: Seljuq Turk list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Richard I of England from 1191 AD to 1192 AD | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace Spearmen and crossbowmen with mixed formations | Military Order | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive spearmen | 9 | 1/2 | 6 | All or none |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | | |
| | Others | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive spearmen | 8 | 1/2 | 6 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | Crossbow | - | 6 | 1/2 | | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive spearmen | 6 | 1/2 | 6 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | | | Crossbow | - | 5 | 1/2 | | |

| Crusader Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Crusader knights, sergeants and turcopoles | Before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-16 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | *4-16 | |
| | From 1098AD to 1099AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 13 | 6-8 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 9 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-16 | |
| Military Order knights, sergeants and turcopoles | From 1130 AD to 1149 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 4 | 0-4 | 8-16 |
| | From 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 8 | 8-10 | 8-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Military Order spearmen | From 1130 AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |

Medieval Welsh

This list covers South Welsh armies from 1094AD until 1284AD and North Welsh armies from 1094 AD until the end of Owain Glyndŵr's rebellion in 1409AD.

Troop Notes

In South Welsh forces of this period archers predominated, while in the North spearmen were the more numerous type. Little, if any, protective armour was worn, and although some spearmen carried shields, many depictions show them without. Although raids and ambushes were preferred, Welsh armies did engage in pitched battles from time to time.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as followers or raiders or spearmen.
- Cavalry can always dismount as Heavy Foot or Medium Foot, Armoured or Protected (as mounted type), Superior or Average (as mounted type), Undrilled, Impact Foot, Swordsmen or Heavy Weapon.
- Welsh knights can dismount as Heavy Foot, Heavily Armoured or Armoured (as mounted type), Superior, Undrilled, Pole Arms.
- Before 1284 AD the army must be North Welsh or South Welsh, from 1284 AD the army is treated as North Welsh.
- Minimum marked * only applies from 1350 AD
- North Welsh armies can have North Welsh and/or South Welsh allies. Troops included in these allied contingents are deducted from the North Welsh minima and maxima in the main list, except that a North Welsh army with South Welsh allies cannot have more than 32 bases of archers.
- South Welsh armies can have South Welsh allies. Troops included in this allied contingent are deducted from the South Welsh minima and maxima in the main list.
- Welsh knights cannot be used with French allies. (If French allies are used, any Welsh knights present are assumed to be included amongst the French men-at-arms.)

| Medieval Welsh | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Mountains, Hilly, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Welsh Cavalry | Before 1285AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 4-16 |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 13 | | 4-12 | |
| | From 1285AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsman | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 13 | | 4-12 | |
| | Any Date | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | | | - | Lancers, Swordsman | 8 | | | |
| Welsh knights | Only from 1350AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | Armoured | | | | | 16 | | | |
| Archers | North Welsh | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | *8-24 | |
| | South Welsh | | | | | | | | | 40-96 | |
| | Any | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Spearmen | North Welsh | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-12 | 40-96 | |
| | South Welsh | | | | | | | | 8-10 | 0-24 | |
| | Any | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Optional troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Veteran archers | Only from 1350 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| English archer allies (only from 1150 AD to 1322 AD) – see Anglo-Norman and Early Plantagenet English list (until 1272 AD) or Middle Plantagenet English list after 1272 AD) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Irish mercenary allies (only before 1150 AD) – see Book 2: Norse Irish list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| North Welsh allies (only North Welsh) – see Medieval Welsh list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| South Welsh allies (only before 1284 AD) – see Medieval Welsh list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| French allies (only in 1405 AD) – see Medieval French list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Medieval Welsh Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Welsh cavalry | Before 1285AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 13 | | |
| | From 1285AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsman | 17 | 4-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 13 | | |
| Archers | North Welsh | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | South Welsh | | | | | | | | | 16-32 |
| | Any | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| Spearmen | North Welsh | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-12 | 16-32 |
| | South Welsh | | | | | | | | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | Any | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light spear | 5 | 6 | 0-6 |

Medieval Burmese

In 1044 King Anawrahta seized the throne of Pagan and attacked both the Mon and Shan towns in the region coming to rule over most of modern Burma (Myanmar). The Pagan Empire was centred on the city of Pagan and was dominated by ethnically Burman people. Other main centres of Pagan power were the cities of Ava and Toungoo.

Pagan Burma fought many campaigns against non-Burman towns in Burma, invading Chinese expeditions, city-states in the eastern part of India, and the Mongols of Yuan China. The Mongol expedition which conquered Pagan contained a higher percentage of Mongol troops than earlier Yuan armies which had failed.

Following the sack of Pagan by the Mongols in 1287 AD control of Burma shifted between the three main ethnic groups in the region and includes the long era of war with Siam. The empire would shift between being dominated by the ethnic Burman, Shan and/or Mon. Throughout the period, small city-states continued to dot Burma and often provided vital manpower resources to the dynastic power or a new rival rising to challenge them.

This list covers Burmese armies from 1100 AD to 1500 AD. Before 1288 AD all armies are **Pagan**. From 1288 AD they must be selected as either **Burman**, **Mon** or **Shan**.

Troop Notes

Marco Polo describes Burmese elephants at the battle of Vochan (1272) as having castles on their backs capable of accommodating 12 or 16 crew. However, Jewish and Greek sources also (probably unreliably) describe elephants from more westerly states with huge crews, so we do not treat Burmese elephants differently from others.

Mong troops represent troops contributed by towns dominated by an ethnic group other than the Dynastic central power. A Mong was the common term for the many small walled towns in Burma. Ethnic troops are those men provided by other towns with the same ethnic background as the rulers. Ethnic and Mong cavalry were not in high demand for campaigns, so are considered optional. Dynastic troops are essentially guard troops from the current capital and very loyal to the king. Unshielded troops classified as Protected wear quilted cotton armour.

Most Shan dynastic armies contained a core of full-time guards often containing mercenaries. The bulk of the troops would be poorly armed tribal levies.

The Burman were considered to be the best archers and drilled infantry. The Burman dynasties were known for hiring Shan spearmen as their bodyguards. The distinctive Burman cone shaped headdress was a mark of its 'regular' soldiers during the Pagan Empire but may not have been used in the Burman-Toungoo Empire. The upper class would wear breast-plate and sometimes mail armour into battle.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as guards or elephants.
- Shan spearmen must be all be armed with light spear or all defensive spearmen.
- Minima marked * apply only if any troops so marked are used
- A Burmese ally-commanders' contingents must conform to the Medieval Burmese Allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.

| Medieval Burmese | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------|--|-------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|------|--------------------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly, Tropical, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | | |
| Burmese allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-1 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Elephants | Mon dynasties | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 28 | 2-3 | | 2-8 | |
| | Other dynasties | | | | | | | | | | 4-12 | |
| Dynastic archers | Any date | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 12-48 | 12-48 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | | | | 0-12 | |
| | | Only from 1288 AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | |
| | Crossbow | - | 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| Mon warriors | Mon Only | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 1/2 | 8-12 | 20-50 | |
| | | | | | | | Swordsmen | | 1/2 | | | |
| Pagan or Burman spearmen | Pagan or Burman only | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 8-10 | | Pagan 16-40, Burman 8-32 | |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear | 6 | | | | |
| Tribal levies | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 8-10 | | 8-32 | |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear | 5 | | | | |
| Shan spearmen | Shan only | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 4 | 8-12 | | 20-40 | |
| | | | | | | | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | | | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|----|-------|-------|
| Guard cavalry | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 10 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Mong cavalry | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 4 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| Ethnic cavalry | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 6 | 4-6 | |
| Guard infantry | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | - | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | | |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | |
| Shan Guard Spearmen | Shan or Burman only | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Ethnic archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | | 0-16 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Mong spearmen | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 2 | 8-10 | *8-16 |
| Mong archers | | | | | | Bow | - | 3 | 6-8 | *8-16 |
| Levy craftsmen or other peasants | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-12 |
| Pagan Archers and Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow or Crossbow | Light Spear | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | |
| Handgunners | Only from 1400 AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Handgun | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Bolt or Stone throwers | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Cannon | Only from 1400 AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Thai Allies (only from 1240 AD) – See Thai Kingdoms list | | | | | | | | | | |

| Medieval Burmese Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Elephants | Mon dynasties | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 28 | 2-3 | 2-3 |
| | Other dynasties | | | | | | | | | 2-4 |
| Dynastic archers | Any date | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 6-24 |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | 6 | 0-6 |
| | Only from 1288 AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | |
| Mon warriors | Mon Only | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 1/2 | 8-10 |
| | | | | | | | Swordsmen | | 1/2 | |
| Pagan or Burman spearmen | Pagan or Burman only | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 8-10 | Pagan 8-16, Burman 0-10 |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear | 6 | | |
| Tribal levies | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 8-10 | 0-10 |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear | 5 | | |
| Shan spearmen | Shan only | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 4 | 8-10 | 6-16 |
| | | | | | | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | | |

Ghurid Afghan

The Ghurids were named from the region in which they originally rose to power - Ghur in Afghanistan between Herat and Ghazni, currently known as Hindustan - although it is uncertain if the ruling elite were ethnically Afghan in origin.

The Ghurids ended Ghaznavid rule in India and captured their base in Lahore. The state they founded in India lasted from 1148 AD until 1206 AD. The Ghurid sultans did not rule from an Indian capital but remained in Afghanistan while their ghulam generals governed their Indian holdings. In 1206 AD Sultan Mu'izz ad-Din Muhammad was assassinated, following which the Ghurid Indian holdings broke away from Afghan rule to establish what became the Delhi Sultanate. The rump of the kingdom was conquered by the Khwarazmians in 1215 AD.

This list covers Ghurid armies based in Ghur from 1100 AD to 1215 AD, those based in Ghazni from 1148 AD to 1206 AD and those in India from 1148 AD to 1191 AD, after which the Ghurid armies in India are covered by the Moslem Indian Sultanates list.

Troop Types

The enigmatic *karwah* has been interpreted in the past as a bullock or buffalo hide stuffed with hay or straw and rolled along in front of troops to protect them from enemy arrows. G.H. Raverty's translation of the *Tabaqat-i-Nasiri* offers the perhaps more plausible interpretation that it was infantry body armour made of rawhide with cotton padding. "The troops of Ghur have a method, in the practice of fighting on foot, of making a certain article of one-fold of raw bullock-hide, over both sides of which they lay cotton, and over all draw figured coarse cotton cloth, after the form of a screen [or breast work], and the name of that article of defence is karwah. When the foot soldiers of Ghur place this [screen] upon their shoulders, they are completely covered from head to foot by it; and when they close their ranks, they appear like unto a wall, and no missile or arms can take any effect on it, on account of the quantity of cotton with which it is stuffed." Either way, troops equipped with *karwah* seem best classified as Heavy Foot.

In addition to the question of the *karwah* it is not clear what weapons or fighting style the Ghurid infantry practiced. We allow various options, however, for infantry with the *karwah*, the player must choose one interpretation for all such troops fielded.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as ghilman, Afghan tribal cavalry, or, after 1148 AD, elephants.
- Only 1 battle group of Ghilman bodyguards can be used.
- The minimum marked * only applies if elephants, Indian allies or more than 8 bases of Turkish tribal cavalry are used.
- ** Ghurid infantry with *karwah* must all have the same close combat capabilities.
- A Ghurid ally commander's contingent must conform to the Ghurid Afghan allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Indian allies cannot be used with other allies.

| Ghurid Afghan | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|--|-------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Mountains, Hilly, Agricultural | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Ghurid ally commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-2 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ghilman | Only from 1148 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | *6-16 | *6-16 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | | |
| Bodyguards | | | | Elite | | | | 23 | | | |
| Turkish tribal cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-18 | 8-36 |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | Undrilled | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | 11 | | |
| Ghurid infantry | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 8-12 | 24-84 | |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear | 5 | | | |
| ** Ghurid infantry with <i>karwah</i> | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | | | |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Light Foot | | | | | | | | | |
| Afghan tribal cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | | |
| Khurasanian mercenaries | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 14 | | | |
| | | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | | |
| Elephants | Only from 1148 AD | Elephants | - | Superior | Undrilled | - | - | 35 | 2 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 25 | | | |
| Slingers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |

| Allies |
|--|
| Sistan (Saffarid) allies – see Book 2: Khurasanian Dynasties list |
| Ghuzz or other Turkish allies (only from 1150 AD) – see Book 2: Later Eastern Steppe Horse Cultures list |
| Indian allies (from 1186 AD to 1191 AD) – see Book 2 Later Hindu North Indian list |

| Ghurid Afghan Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Ghilman | Only from 1148 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | | |
| Turkish tribal cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Ghurid infantry | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 8-10 | 10-30 | |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear | 5 | | | |
| Ghurid infantry with <i>karwah</i> | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | | | |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | | |

Jurchen-Jin

The Jurchens were semi-sedentary tribes from the eastern part of Manchuria whom the Chinese traditionally divided into two – firstly the “tame” (literally “cooked”) Jurchens and secondly the “wild” (“uncooked”) Jurchens. It was from the second of these that the Imperial Jin dynasty was to dramatically arise in the later part of the 12th century, although their military impact was not felt until they rebelled against their Liao overlords in 1114 AD. They were led by the ambitious and visionary Aguda, who had become leader of the recently united Jurchens on his brother's death in 1113 AD.

Although they were not themselves nomads the Jurchens were heavily influenced by their nomad neighbours, and it was with an army of 10,000 cavalry that Aguda gained his first victory over a much larger Liao army led by the Liao emperor in 1114 AD. The victory was so complete that Aguda was moved to declare his own Jin (Gold) dynasty in 1115 AD.

This list covers the Jurchens from the start of Aguda's reign in 1113 AD until their final defeat by the Mongols in 1234 AD.

Troop Notes

Whilst initially the Jurchen cavalry were not fully equipped, only 2 ranks of the 5 rank *guaizima* formation being armoured, they quickly adopted more complete armour from their defeated Liao and Song opponents. At the start of the Jin period the most heavily armoured cavalry was nicknamed “iron pagodas” and may have formed separate bodies on the battlefield. Tactics in the early period were a charge to close combat “shot in” by the rear 3 ranks who were archers. We classify this as Bow*, Lancers, Swordsmen.

As Liao and other troops were incorporated into the army, traditional steppe practice started to dominate, and so we allow greater numbers of Bow, Swordsmen cavalry. Eventually the *guaizima* formation probably disappeared. The formation of a formal bureau of military affairs in 1152 AD is taken as the start of this process.

By the last quarter of the 12th century, those Jurchens who had been settled in north China needed government assistance to avoid penury. One result of this was a decline in the quality of some Jin cavalry, although the wars against the Mongols show that many remained as effective as before.

Chinese infantry was rapidly included in the army following the defeat of the Liao and Northern Song. These are assumed to follow the existing Song patterns. Anti-cavalry squads represent Chinese infantry armed with a mixture of two-handed swords, axes, pole axes and shorter swords. One of the main roles of such troops in Song armies was to fight enemy cavalry. We assume they served the same function in Jin armies; hence we have classified them as Heavy Foot.

Later additional infantry, known as *Zhongxiao jun* (“loyal and filial troops”), were added, although these were noted as being less disciplined but still good fighters. Although there are no clear details, we assume that they included missile-men and close combat infantry.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Jurchen Cavalry.
- Minimum marked * only applies before 1152 AD
- Chinese infantry must be selected as either all in mixed formations or all in separate formations. The minimum marked ** only applies to the formation type selected.

| Jurchen-Jin | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--------|
| Territory Types: Before 1126 AD - Agricultural, Woodland. From 1126 AD - Agricultural, Developed, Hilly, Woodland | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Jurchen cavalry in "guaizima" formation | Before 1180AD | Cataphracts | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow* | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-24 | 12-54 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | *8-24 | | |
| Jurchen, Qidan and similar cavalry | Before 1152AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | From 1152AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-30 | | |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 15 | | 8-36 | | |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | 12 | | | | |
| Anti-cavalry squads | From 1127AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 4-6 | | | 0-8 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 7 | 6-8 | | | |
| Chinese infantry in mixed formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | | **6-40 |
| | | | | | | - | 1/2 | | | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | Crossbow | Light Spear | 5 | 1/2 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | | | | - | 1/2 | | | | | |
| Chinese infantry in separate formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 0-16 | **6-40 |
| | | | | - | | Bow | - | | | **6-16 | | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 6 | | | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|-----|------|------|
| Bohai and other tribal cavalry | Before 1180AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 0-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 11 | | 0-8 | |
| Zhongxiao jun | From 1180AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 7 | 6-8 | 0-18 | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | 6 | | | |
| Steppe mercenaries | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 10 | | | |
| | | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | | | |
| Chinese artillery | From 1127AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light Artillery | - | 17 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Huotong "fire tube" armed foot | From 1215AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Steppe allies (Only from 1126 AD to 1211 AD) – see Book 2: Later Eastern Steppe Horse Cultures list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Jurchen-Jin Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----|-------------|------|---|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | | |
| Jurchen cavalry in "guaizima" formation | Only before 1180 AD | Cataphracts | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow* | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | | 0-12 | 6-24 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | | *4-24 | | |
| Jurchen, Qidan and similar cavalry | Only before 1152 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | | 0-4 | | |
| | Only from 1152 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | | 0-16 | | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | | 4-24 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | | | |
| Anti-cavalry squads | Only from 1127 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 4 | | 0-4 | | |
| Undrilled | | | | | 7 | | | | | | | | |
| Chinese infantry in mixed formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-18 | | |
| | | | | | | | - | 7 | 1/2 | | | | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | Light Spear | 5 | 1/2 | 6-8 | | | |
| | | | | | | | - | 5 | 1/2 | | | | |
| Chinese infantry in separate formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6 | | 0-12 | 0-18 | |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | 7 | 6 | | | | |
| | Average | | | | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 6 | | 0-6 | | |
| | | | | | | | | Poor | | | | | 6 |

Medieval Irish

This list covers native Irish armies from 1167 AD to 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Irish warriors of this period were armed with short thrusting spear, javelins and big axes. Although Giraldus Cambrensis describes the Irish axe as used in one hand, several contemporary illustrations, including in his own manuscript, show it being used two-handed. Giraldus states that neither helmet nor mail were any protection against it. "The whole thigh of a soldier, though ever so well cased in iron mail, is cut off by one blow of the axe, the thigh and the leg falling on one side of the horse, and the dying body on the other". We therefore allow players the option to treat all such axes as heavy weapon, or only those used two-handed. In the latter case, battle groups graded as light spear, swordsmen are those with a low proportion of men using two-handed axes.

Bands of landless Irish adventurers hiring themselves out as mercenaries were known in this period as Diberghaigh, as some modelled themselves on the former pagan Dibergha and Fianna warrior cults, who shaved their hair at the front and grew it long and plaited at the back.

Following their first employment by Diarmait MacMurchada in 1167 AD, Anglo-Norman mercenaries and allies continued to be found in Irish armies at various times throughout the period. We assume that the mercenary leaders were sufficiently independent to be treated as allies.

Galloglagh (foreign warriors) were mercenary warriors from the Western Isles and west coast of Scotland, serving under their own chieftains. Several clans of galloglaigh settled permanently in Ireland, notably the MacSúibhne (MacSweeney), MacDomhnaill (MacDonnell/MacDowell), MacSiothaigh (MacSheehy), MacDubhgaill (MacDougall), MacCaba (MacCabe) and MacRuairi (MacRory) clans. The classic galloglaigh weapon was the two-handed axe, though not all were so armed. They aspired to a mail coat, but grave effigies make it clear that a high proportion wore only a helmet and the textile cotun (akheton).

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as nobles and retainers.
- Irish ally-commanders' contingents must conform to the Medieval Irish allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Before 1260 AD nobles and retainers fielded as cavalry can always dismount as Medium Foot, Unprotected, Superior, Undrilled, Heavy Weapon.
- The minima marked * only applies from 1300 AD.

| Medieval Irish | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 40/30 | | 0-2 | | |
| Irish ally-commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-2 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Nobles and retainers | Any date | Heavy Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 9 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 6-16 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Before 1260AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-16 | | |
| | From 1260AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | | | | | Lancers, Swordsmen | | | | | | |
| | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 4-6 | | |
| Galloglaigh | From 1260AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 10 | 8-10 | 0-16 | *8-30 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 7 | | *8-30 | | |
| Other warriors or kerns | Before 1260AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 8-10 | 32-96 | | |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | 5 | | | | |
| | Any date | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 8-12 | 6-16 | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | | 5 | 6-8 | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dibergaigh | Before 1260AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Levies | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Javelins | - | 3 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | |
| Rising Out | From 1260AD | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 8-12 | 0-12 | | |
| Skirmishers | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | 5 | | | | |
| Trenches, abatis or plashing | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-24 | | |
| Fortified Camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | |

| Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------|---------|-----------|---|--------------------|-------|------|------|
| Anglo-Norman or English allies – see Anglo-Irish list | | | | | | | | | |
| Islesmen allies (only from 1200 AD) –see Scots Isles and Highlands list | | | | | | | | | |
| Viking or Ostmen allies (only before 1195 AD) – see Book 2: Viking list | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | |
| Edward Bruce's campaigns from 1315 AD to 1318 AD | | | | | | | | | |
| Replace Irish C-in-C with Scottish C-in-C (Edward Bruce) | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 40/30 | 1 | |
| Scottish men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 3-4 | 0-4 |
| Scottish spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-10 | 8-16 |

| Medieval Irish Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Nobles and retainers | Any date | Heavy Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 9 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | | | |
| | Before 1260AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | | |
| | From 1260AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 17 | 4 | | |
| Lancers, Swordsmen | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Gallloglaigh | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 10 | 8-10 | 0-8 | 0-10 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 7 | | 0-10 | |
| Other warriors or kerns | Before 1260AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 8-10 | 10-36 | |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 5 | | | |
| | Any date | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 8-12 | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | 6-8 | | |

Ayyubid Egyptian

This list covers the armies of the Ayyubid Sultanate of Egypt from the death of the last Fatimid Caliph in 1171 AD until the overthrow of the Ayyubid dynasty by its own Mamluks in 1250 AD.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Mamluks.
- Only 1 battlegroup of Royal Mamluks may be used. Bases for this battlegroup must be deducted from the permitted bases of upgraded veteran (superior) cavalry.
- Mamluks and other armoured horse archers can always dismount as Medium Foot, Armoured, Drilled, Superior or Average (as mounted type), Bow, Swordsmen. **Elite (Royal) Mamluks cannot dismount.**

| Ayyubid Egyptian | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|--|-------------|------------|--------------|----------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | | | | | Close Combat |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mamluks and other armoured horse archers | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 6-24 | |
| Upgrade Mamluks to Veteran | | | | Superior | | | | 20 | | Up to 2/3 of bases | |
| Further upgrade veteran Mamluks to Royal Mamluks | | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 23 | 2-4 | Up to 1 BG | |
| Armoured lancers | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 6-24 | |
| | | | | Undrilled | 12 | | | Up to 2/3 of bases | | | |
| Upgrade armoured lancers to veterans | | | | Superior | Drilled | | | | | 18 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | | | 17 | |
| Turcoman cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-8 | 4-18 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| Bedouin cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 4-8 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dismounted Mamluks | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 14 | 6 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 10 | | 0-6 | |
| Foot archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-12 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 |
| Javelinmen | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| Ahdath militia | Before 1194AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 2/3 | 9-12 | 0-24 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | Bow | - | 3 | 1/3 | | |
| | | Mob | Unprotected | | | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Khwarazmian allies (Only from 1244 AD to 1245 AD) – see Book 2: Seljuq Turk list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Ayyubid Egyptian Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Mamluks and other armoured horse archers | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | Average | | | | 15 | | 4-12 | |
| Armoured lancers | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | Undrilled | 17 | | | 4-12 | | | |
| | | | Drilled | 13 | | | | | | |
| | | | Average | Undrilled | | | | | 12 | |
| Turcoman cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 0-8 |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| Bedouin cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 9 | 4-6 | | |

Anglo-Irish

This list covers Anglo-Irish armies from 1172 AD to 1500 AD. The title of the English governor changed over the period from Justiciar to Lieutenant and then to Lord Deputy. For convenience he will be referred to hereafter as the Justiciar.

Troop Notes

Scots colonists from the Western seaboard of Scotland were settled in northern Ulster following grants of land to the Earls of Galloway and Atholl by King John. Justiciar's hobilar's were primarily mounted infantry, so count as Poor while mounted. Large armies usually included Irish allied contingents.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- C-in-C and sub-commanders should be depicted as knights or men-at-arms.
- Anglo-Irish commanders should be depicted as Anglo-Irish cavalry.
- Justiciar's men-at-arms can always dismount as Heavy Foot, Heavily Armoured, Superior, Drilled, Pole Arm.
- Justiciar's hobilar's can always dismount as Medium Foot, Protected, Average, Drilled, Defensive Spearmen.
- Minimum marked * only applies before 1330 AD.
- Dismounted men-at-arms and billmen can interpenetrate longbowmen and vice versa.
- Anglo-Irish ally commanders' contingents must conform to the Anglo-Irish allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.

| Anglo-Irish | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|----------|------|-------------|---|------|------|
| Territory Type: Agricultural | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | | | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 40/30 | | 0-2 | | | | | | |
| Anglo-Irish ally commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-2 | | | | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | | | | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Norman knights and sergeants | Before 1330AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | 4-12 | | | | | |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | | | | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | 4 | 0-4 | | | | | | |
| Anglo-Irish cavalry | From 1330AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | | | | | |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 4-12 | | | | | | |
| Foot sergeants | Before 1330AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 6-24 | | | | | | |
| English archers | Before 1275AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 8-32 | | | | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | Bow | - | 5 | | | | | | | | |
| English or Welsh Longbowmen | Before 1275AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 8-32 | | | | | | |
| | From 1275AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 8-32 | 8-32 | | | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | 6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | | | | 6-8 | 0-12 | | | |
| Irish warriors or kerns | Before 1275AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 8-12 | 8-36 | | 8-36 | | | | |
| | From 1275AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 5 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | | Light Spear | 6 | 8-12 | 8-24 |
| | | | | | | | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | | | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Justicar's men-at-arms | From 1330AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | | | | | |
| Justicar's hobilar's | Before 1400AD | Cavalry | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Swordsmen | 7 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | | | | | |
| Justicar's longbowmen | From 1400AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | | | | | | | |
| Gallloglaigh | From 1275AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-18 | | | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 7 | | 0-18 | | | | | | |
| Irish cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | | | | | |
| Scots colonists | Before 1330AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | - | Offensive Spearmen | | | | | | | | | |
| Colonist billmen | From 1400AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 7 | 8-10 | 0-24 | | | | | | |
| Bombards | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | | | | | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow BG - Only from 1415 AD | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | | | | | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow BG - Only from 1415 AD | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | All or none | | | | | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | | | | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Medieval Irish allies (up to 2 contingents) – see Medieval Irish list | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Manx Viking allies (Only from 1177 AD to 1266 AD) – see Book 2: Viking list | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Anglo-Irish Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------|---|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|--|
| Allied commander | | Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Norman knights and sergeants | Before 1330AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| Anglo-Irish cavalry | From 1330AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-4 | | |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| Foot sergeants | Before 1330AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | |
| English or Welsh longbowmen | Before 1275AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 8-16 | | |
| | From 1275AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 8-16 | 8-16 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | 0-6 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | | | | |
| Irish warriors or kerns | Before 1275AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 8-10 | 8-16 | 8-16 | |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 5 | | | | |
| | From 1275AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 8-10 | 8-12 | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |

Medieval Cypriot

In 1192AD Guy de Lusignan purchased the island from the Templars, who had purchased it from Richard Coeur de Lion. A feudal Kingdom was set up, ruled by Guy and his successors. Genoa controlled part of the Island from 1373AD to 1464AD. The kingdom was tributary to Mamluk Egypt from 1426AD. Venice occupied the island in 1474AD, and purchased sovereignty from the last Lusignan queen in 1489AD.

This list covers the armies of the Kingdom of Cyprus from 1192AD until 1489AD.

Troop Notes

Infantry were mainly provided by the native Greek-speaking populace, but also included Franks, Armenians and Maronites. Classification of the fighting style of the Catalan mercenaries presents a problem – therefore we give them a choice of classification.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.

| Medieval Cypriot | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|------------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Knights and sergeants | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 30 | 2 | 0-2 | 6-12 |
| | | | Superior | | | | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| Spearmen | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 8-32 |
| | | Protected | | | | | 6 | 8-12 | 8-24 | |
| Archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 6 | | 6-16 | |
| Crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed turcoples | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| Mercenary crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Arriere-ban | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Hospitaller knights and sergeants | Only from 1291AD to 1449AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 |
| Hospitaller spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| Hospitaller crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| Catalan mercenaries | From 1320AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 7 | | |
| | | | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 10 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 7 | | |
| Turcoman mercenaries | Only from 1415AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 11 | | |
| Stradiots | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | | 9 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 8 | | |
| Italian billmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arms | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Italian handgunners | | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearms | - | 6 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mamluk allies (Only from 1460AD to 1464Ad – see Mamluk Egyptian) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only from 1373AD to 1374AD | | | | | | | | | | |
| Bulgarian and other ex-slaves | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-16 | |
| | | | Poor | | | | 6 | | | |

| Medieval Cypriot Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied Commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Knights and sergeants | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | |
| Spearmen | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 6-16 |
| | | Protected | | | | | 5 | 8-10 | 0-16 | |
| Archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |

Moslem Indian Sultanates

After the conquest of the rump Ghaznavid territories in India by the Ghurids, the next major involvement of Moslem armies was under the Ghurid Sultan Mu'izz ad-Din Muhammad who attempted to conquer the whole of northern India. Following a series of setbacks, during which he was nearly killed at the First Battle of Tarain, he recruited a large cavalry army, reputedly 120,000 strong, and at the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192 AD he destroyed the opposing Hindu army and went on to conquer Delhi. This use of large numbers of mainly Turkish cavalry set the basis for all following Moslem armies in India and is thus taken as the start date for this list. This list covers Moslem Indian armies from 1192 AD to 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Gunpowder skirmishers include "grenade" throwers (*ra'd-andaz*), firework throwers (*atash-baz*) and those using hand held rockets (*taksh-andaz*).

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as mamluks.
- No more than 1 battlegroup of elite bodyguards may be used.
- Minima marked * only apply if any elephants or foot are used or after 1266 AD.
- A Moslem Indian Sultanates ally commander's contingent must conform to the Moslem Indian Sultanates allies list below, but the troops other than those marked * in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- **Afghan infantry with *karwah* must all have the same close combat capabilities.

| Moslem Indian Sultanates | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|--|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 |
| Moslem Indian Sultanates ally commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-2 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Elephants | | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | - | - | 25 | 2-3 | *3-8 |
| Mamluk bodyguards | | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 23 | 2-4 | Up to 1 battle group |
| Mamluk, <i>murattab</i> , and similar cavalry | Before 1220AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 4-16 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | |
| Turkish tribal cavalry, ghazis, etc. | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 4-24 |
| | | | | | | | | Unprotected | | |
| | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Lesser cavalry, Indians and <i>duaspa</i> | From 1220AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | |
| | From 1296AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | 8-32 |
| | | | | | | | | Protected | | |
| Hindu swordsmen, <i>paik</i> | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 5 | 6-10 | *6-24 |
| Hindu archers, <i>dhanuk</i> | | | | | | Bow | - | | 6-8 | *12-36 |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Afghan horse | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| Horse archers or mercenary nomads | From 1220AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | |
| | | | | | | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | |
| Hindu javelinmen | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Afghan infantry | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | | |
| Afghan infantry with <i>karwah</i> | Before 1220AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | **0-24 |
| | | | | | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | |
| Abyssinian bodyguard | From 1340AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 11 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Handgunners | From 1340AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Camp followers | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-12 |
| Rocket troops | From 1340AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light Artillery | - | 17 | 2 | 0-6 |
| Bolt-shooters | | | | | Undrilled | | | 15 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Stone-throwers or Bombards | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Southern Hindu Indian allies (only from 1296 AD) – see Book 2: Later Hindu Indian list | | | | | | | | | | |

| Moslem Indian Sultanates Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Elephants | | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | - | - | 25 | 2-3 | 0-3 | |
| Mamluk, <i>murattab</i> , and similar cavalry | Before 1220 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-18 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | | |
| Cavalry | | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 4-16 | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | | |
| Turkish tribal cavalry, ghazis, etc. | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Lesser cavalry, Indians and <i>duaspa</i> | Only from 1220 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | | | |
| | Only from 1296 AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | | |
| Hindu swordsmen, <i>paik</i> | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 5 | 6-10 | *0-10 | |
| Hindu archers, <i>dhanuk</i> | | | | | | Bow | - | | 6-8 | *6-16 | |

South-Eastern Woodland Culture

The South-Eastern Woodland culture was a post Mound-Builder culture that dominated the south-east of the United States until the arrival of the Europeans. The tribes were from various language/cultural group, including the Caddo, Biloxi-Souian, Timucuan and the dominate Muskogee.

By the start of the 1500, the Muskogee occupied nearly all of what is now the south-east United States. The Muskogee culture consisted of the Creek, Choctaw, Hitchiti-Creek and Muskogee-Creek. The other dominate tribe which entered the area at the end of the era was the Cherokee, who were Iroquoian.

The Creek nation operated as a loose confederacy with minor tribes from different ethnic groups. This confederation is thought to have started as a defensive strategy against the other larger Indian tribes of the region. The Creek alliance would gain and lose land and people as small tribes joined and withdrew. The Creek towns were located mainly in the modern states of Georgia and Alabama.

The Choctaw were the largest pf the Muskogean culture nations. They controlled the area of middle and southern Mississippi, with some villages and hunting territory located east of the Tombigbee River. They were closely related to the Chickasaw, who were their bitter enemies. The Choctaw were differentiated from other Muskogean tribes by the practice of "head flattening" and wearing long and unbraided hair.

The Chikasaw was another Muskogean tribe closely related to the Choctaw language and customs. The Chokataw initially settled in northern Alabama on the north side of the Tennessee River. Eventually they established their main towns in northern Mississippi. The warlike Chikasaw claimed hunting territory far from their villages. They were constantly fighting with the nearby tribes, including the Choctaw, Creeks, Cherokee, Illinois, Kickapoo, Shawnee, Mobilians, Osage, and Quapaw.

This list covers armies of the South-Eastern Woodland culture armies from 1300AD to 1500AD

Troop Notes

Warriors include a mixture of veterans and lower ranking warriors variously armed with bows and/or spears and/or war clubs. Veratan warriors can be distinguished by warriors using two-handed war-clubs or by wearing gorgets of shell. Ambush parties were assigned at the initial war councils and comprised of picked warriors.

Some use was made of raw-hide armour and shields. The extent of such usage is uncertain. We therefore give the option of rating troops as Protected or Unprotected.

The Pensacola Bay and Mobile Bay Choctaws used *atlats* instead of bows.

Subject tribes are vassals of the dominant tribe in the area.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be veteran warriors.
- South-Eastern Woodland cultures allied commands must conform to the South-Eastern Woodland Cultures Allies list, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list. Choctaws can have non-Choctaw allies and vice versa.

| South-Eastern Woodland Culture | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|-------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-----|------|
| Territory Types: Woodlands, Hilly, Agricultural | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| South-Eastern Woodland allied commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-2 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed veteran warriors or ambush parties | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 10 | 6-10 | 6-20 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 8 | | | | |
| | Any except Pensacola,or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 11 | 6-10 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | | | |
| | Only Pensacola or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 11 | 6-10 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | | | |
| Warriors | Any except Pensacola, or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 8 | 8-10 | 24-96 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | | |
| | Only Pensacola or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 8 | 8-10 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | | |
| | Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Skirmishing archers | Any except Pensacola, or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | | 6-8 | 0-24 |
| Atlatl skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | | |
| Subject tribe foot | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 2 | 6-12 | 0-24 | | |

| South-Eastern Woodland Culture Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied Commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed veteran warriors or ambush parties | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 10 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 8 | | |
| | Any except Pensacola,or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 11 | 6-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | |
| | Only Pensacola or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 11 | 6-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | |
| Warriors | Any except Pensacola,or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 8 | 8-10 | 10-40 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | |
| | Only Pensacola or Mobile Bay Choctaws | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 8 | 8-10 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | |

Mongol Conquest

This list covers the steppe based Mongol armies of the “conquest” period from 1218 AD until 1265 AD, the Ilkhanid armies in Persia and the near East from the conquest of the Shahdom of Khwarazm in 1230 AD until the assassination of the last il-Khanid pretender in 1353 AD, and the Tatar armies of the Golden Horde and its successors from 1242 AD until 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Mongol forces used normal nomad horse archer tactics. Their amazing military success can be attributed more to organisation and discipline than to tactical innovation. They also became expert at siege warfare, using engineers recruited from their settled subjects. Breaking with Mongol tradition, Chinggis appointed officers on the basis of merit rather than family connections. He retained the traditional decimal organisation of steppe armies, but formalised it into a permanent structure: The basic squad (*arbat*) consisted of ten men; ten *arbats* (100 men) made a *zuut*; ten *zuuts* (1,000 men) made a *myanghan* and ten *myanghans* (10,000 men) made a *tumen* – forming a strategic division of the army. He incorporated the forces of subjugated tribes into his army on the same basis. In conjunction with strictly imposed discipline and a new code of laws (the Yassa) regulating all aspects of life, this formal organisation made the Mongol army far more effective than its tribal predecessors.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as guard or best equipped Mongol cavalry.
- Armies are either **Mongol**, **Ilkhanid** or **Tatar**.
- 'Core' cavalry in a Mongol army can always dismount. Light Horse dismount as Light Foot, Cavalry as Medium Foot. They will be Armoured, Protected or Unprotected (as mounted type), Average or Superior (as mounted type), Drilled, Bow, Swordsmen.

| Mongol Conquest | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|-----------------|------------------|----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|------|------|
| Territory Types: - Mongol and Tatar: Steppes, Agricultural; Ilkhanid: Agricultural, Developed | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Best equipped cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | Swordsmen | | | 20 | | | | | |
| | | | Average | | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | | | | |
| Other cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 4-16 | | |
| | | | Average | | | | 10 | | | | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | 4-16 | | |
| | | Protected | Average | | | | | | | | |
| | | Protected | Average | | | | 12 | | | | |
| | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 11 | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Guard cavalry | Mongols only | Light Horse | Protected | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-8 |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow* | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | | |
| | | Cavalry | | | | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 24 | | | |
| | Others | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 24 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Nomad cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-24 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-24 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Qidan, Jurchen, "Black Army" or Khwazrzmian cavalry | Only Mongols | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4 | 0-4 | 0-16 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | 4-6 | 0-16 | |
| Kurdish cavalry | Only Ilkhanids | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Kurdish archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Frankish knights | Only Ilkhands from 1260AD to 1308AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| Hospitaller knights | | Knights | | Superior | Drilled | - | | 29 | 3-4 | | |
| Frankish crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Hospitaller crossbowmen | | | | | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | | | |
| Armenian archers | Only Tatar | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Italian crossbowmen | | | Protected | | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Naffatun | Only Tatar from 1340AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Stone throwers and bolt shooters | Only Mongol and Ilkhanid | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-4 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |

| Allies |
|--|
| Jin allies (only Mongols before 1260 AD) - see Jurchen-Jin list |
| Koryo Korean allies (only Mongols from 1242 AD) |
| Uighur allies (only Mongols) – see Book 2: Later Eastern Steppe Horse Cultures list |
| Cilician Armenian allies (only Ilkhanid) |
| Georgian allies (only Tatar before 1259 AD or Ilkhanid) – see Book 2: Georgian list |
| Golden Horde (Tatar) allies (only Ilkhanid) – see Mongol Conquest list |
| Seljuq or Syrian allies (only Ilkhanid before 1262 AD) – see Book 2: Seljuq Turk list |
| Later Russian Allies (only Tatar) – see Later Rus and Early Russian list |
| Ottoman Turkish allies (only Tatar from 1450 AD) - see Ottoman Turkish list |

| Mongol Conquest Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Best equipped cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| | | | Average | | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | | |
| | | | | | | Swordsmen | 15 | | |
| Other cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 4-8 |
| | | | Average | | | | 10 | | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | 4-16 | |
| | | Protected | | | | 12 | | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | Average | | | 11 |

Medieval Indonesian or Malay

This list covers Indonesian and Malay armies from 1222 AD to 1500 AD.

The Indonesians consider ten main ethnic groups to occupy the islands. These are geographically based around Central Java, Bali, West Sumatra, South Sulawesi, East Nusa-Tenggara, Central Sulawesi, West Kalimantan, Maluku, East Java and Papua. Throughout much of this era Indonesia was consumed by both civil wars and an Islamic Jihad aimed at converting the islands. Balinese Hinduism was distinctly anti-Moslem.

The Singosari-Majapahit Kingdom located in eastern Java was founded circa 1222 AD, when the town of Singosari destroyed its rival Kediri/Mataram after years of civil war. It lasted until 1518 AD. At the height of its power it controlled all of Indonesia and Malaysia, although historians from rival cities maintain that it actually only controlled parts of several key islands. Following the foundation of the kingdom, it quickly expanded control over the islands of Madura, Bali, numerous smaller islands and even conquered part of southern Sumatra.

A brief civil war between 1289 AD and 1300 AD saw Mongol (Yuan Chinese) intervention to aid one of the factions. The Mongol-supported faction won, but soon turned on their allies and drove the Mongols out of the country. The capital of the kingdom shifted at about this time to Majapahit and the kingdom expanded into an empire.

The civil war of Majapahit which ended in 1406 AD saw Prince Paramisora of Blambangan flee to Tumasik and then to the Malacca Peninsula. There he established the kingdom of Malacca.

Armies should be designated as: **Malay, Sumatran, Singosari-Majapahit, Javanese** or, from 1406 AD **Malacca Malay**.

Troop Notes

Indonesia and Malay troops were known for their fierce attack and disregard for their own safety.

The use of the spear and blades dominated Indonesian warfare. A statue in Alor, Indonesia, shows a warrior with a light spear and long wooden shield. From the start of the 13th century many of the troops armed with bows, spears and blowguns also carried a kerambit. The kerambit had a unique curved blade shape that symbolised a "tiger claw".

The Buginese and Makasar people from South Sulawesi region were known as tough sailors, mercenaries and fearless warriors. Artwork shows them armed with swords and javelins. A drawing of a Papuan warrior shows him with a light spear and shield that reaches from the feet to the neck. A drawing of a West Kalimantan warrior has him with a kris and smaller shield.

Skirmishers are assumed to be armed with a mixture of blow-pipes and other missile weapons, and assorted bladed hand-to-hand weapons. We treat the mixture as Javelins, Light Spear. Cavalry and elephants were unavailable in some areas.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted on elephants (unless Javanese or Macca Malay), as noble cavalry or warriors, or, if Javanese, in a chariot.

| Medieval Indonesian or Malay | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|-------------|----------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--------------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Tropical, Hilly, Mountains | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | | | | | Close Combat |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 12-36 | |
| Warriors | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 7 | 8-12 | 12-48 | 32-96 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | 12-48 | |
| Veteran warriors | | | Protected | Superior | | | | 10 | 6-8 | 0-24 | |
| Elephants | Malay or Sumatran Singosari-Majapahit before 1406AD | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | - | - | 25 | 2-3 | 2-8 | |
| | Only Macca Malay | | | | | | | | 2 | 0-2 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Noble horse | | Light Horse | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-24 | |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | | | | |
| Uniformed light cavalry | Only Singosari-Majapahit | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Levy Foot | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 2 | 8-10 | 0-20 | |
| Peasants | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | | |
| Hand-gunners | From 1435AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Cannon | From 1400AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Turkish cannon | Malacca Malay from 1435AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | | |

| Allies | |
|---|--|
| Only Malay | |
| Javanese allies (Only Malacca Malay from 1435 AD) – see Medieval Indonesian or Malay list | |
| Sinhalese allies (Only from 1240 AD to 1270 AD) – see Book 2: Later Hindu Indian list | |
| Ming Chinese allies (Only from 1409 AD to 1435 AD) – see Ming Chinese list | |
| Only Singosari-Majapahit | |
| Javanese allies (Only from 1270 AD to 1390 AD) – see Medieval Indonesian or Malay list | |
| Yuan Chinese allies (Only from 1289 AD to 1300 AD) – see Yuan Chinese list | |

| Medieval Indonesian or Malay Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Point s per base | Bas es per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 6-18 | |
| Warriors | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 7 | 8-12 | 12-36 | 12- 36 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Veteran warriors | | | | Protected | | | | Superior | | | |
| Elephants | Malay or Sumatran | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | - | - | 25 | 2-3 | 0-3 | |
| | Singosari-Majapahit before 1406AD | | | | | | | | | | |

Teutonic Knights

The Teutonic Knights or Teutonic Order (The Order of the German House of St. Mary in Jerusalem) was founded as a German hospital order during the siege of Acre in 1190 AD and transformed into a military order in 1198 AD.

In 1226 AD Konrad I, Duke of Masovia in west-central Poland, invited the Teutonic Knights to assist in the conquest of the pagan Prussians, granting the Order the use of Chełmno Land (Kulmerland) in modern central Poland as their base.

The Livonian Brothers of the Sword, also recruited from Germany, were founded in 1202 AD by Albert of Buxhoeveden, Bishop of Riga, with the aim of converting the pagan Curonians, Livonians, Semigallians, and Latgalians along the Gulf of Riga. After a severe defeat by the Lithuanians and Semigallians at the Battle of Schaulen (Saule) in 1236 AD, they were incorporated into the Teutonic Order.

This list covers the armies of the Ordensstaat of the Teutonic Knights from 1226 AD to 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Subject foot included Estonians, Kurs, Letts, Livs and Prussians. Turcoples were mercenary or native light cavalry. We have found no evidence for the horse archers included in previous published army lists.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as brother knights.
- The minima marked * apply if troops so marked are used.
- Knights can always dismount as Elite, Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Drilled or Undrilled (as mounted type), Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.

| Teutonic Knights | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Brother knights, brethren and sergeants | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 29 | | 4-12 | |
| Vassal, "Crusader" or mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | 6-16 |
| | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 6-16 | |
| Turcoples | Only from 1230 AD | Light horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Serving brother or mercenary spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | *6-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Serving brother or mercenary crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | *6-18 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Subject foot spearmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |
| Subject foot archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| German town militia and colonist spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| German town militia crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Vassal or "Crusader" crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | | |
| Handgunners | Only from 1380 AD | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 6 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Bombards | Only from 1380 AD | Heavy artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Polish allies (only before 1242 AD) – see Book 2: Early Polish allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| German city allies | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Teutonic Knights Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Brother knights, brethren and sergeants | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 3-6 |
| Vassal, "Crusader" or mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 |
| | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 4-8 |
| Turcopoles | Only from 1230 AD | Light horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | |

Mamluk Egyptian

This list covers the armies of the Mamluk Sultanate of Egypt from the overthrow of the last Ayyubid Sultan in 1250 AD following the failure of the 7th Crusade, until 1500 AD. The early Mamluk Sultans maintained an unusually high-quality army and halted the previously inexorable advance of the Mongols.

Troop Notes

Mamluks were exhaustively trained slave soldiers of steppe origin. Halqa were mostly free born cavalry, paid less than the mamluks, and of lower status. Devastating horse archery was central to Mamluk tactics, although they were also equipped with lance and mace. The usual deployment was Mamluk horse archers in the centre, with Turcomans on one wing and Bedouin on the other. Naffatun were armed with naphtha bombs – the Medieval equivalent of Molotov cocktails.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as mamluks.
- Mamluks can always dismount - as Elite, Superior or Average (as per mounted type), Armoured, Drilled Medium Foot – Bow, Swordsmen.
- No more than half the Halqa bases fielded can be Superior.

| Mamluk Egyptian | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Amirs' and previous Sultans' mamluks | Before 1400AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 4-16 | 8-24 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | 4-16 | |
| | From 1400AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | 8-24 | |
| Turcoman cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Bedouin cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 4-8 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | | | | | 8 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sultan's own mamluks | Before 1400AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | From 1400AD | | | Superior | | | | 20 | | | |
| Halqa | Before 1400AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 13 | | 0-6 | |
| Kurdish or Syrian cavalry | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Foot archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Javelinmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Poor quality foot | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-12 | |
| Naffatun | Only before 1490AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Handgunners | Only from 1490AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-2 | |
| Stone-throwers or bolt-shooters | Only before 1340AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | | |
| Light guns | Only from 1340AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light Artillery | - | 17 | 2 | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Syrian Ayyubid allies (only before 1286 AD) – see Book 2: Seljuq list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Mamluk Egyptian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Amirs' and previous Sultans' mamluks | Before 1400AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | 0-8 | |
| | From 1400AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 15 | | 4-12 | |
| Turcoman cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4 | 0-4 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Bedouin cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |

Yuan Chinese

In 1259 AD the Mongol Great Khan Möngke died and was succeeded, although this was disputed, by his brother Khubilai, who was at the time in command of the Mongol armies in China attempting to complete the conquest of the Southern Song. During his time in China, Khubilai had come to recognise the benefits that could be gained from incorporating Chinese practices into the Mongol system. When he became Great Khan, he was in a position to implement this, at least in the part of the Mongol realm where his writ was obeyed. His first, and most important, military act was to finish the conquest of Song which was completed by the end of 1279 AD. At the same time Khubilai was forced to defend his position as Mongol Great Khan against his brother Arigh Böke, whom he finally defeated in 1264 AD. Despite his victory, this civil war effectively marked the end of the unified Mongol realm as the other Khans recognised Khubilai's supremacy only nominally at best, and wars had to be conducted against some.

This list covers the armies of Yuan dynasty China from 1260 AD to 1368 AD.

Troop Notes

The Chinese term *dao* includes any single edged bladed weapon including polearms as well as swords. As well as polearms, many of the swords used, such as the *zhanmadao* and *mazhadao*, were large enough to qualify as Heavy Weapon.

Mixed infantry battle groups represent troops depicted with a front rank of men carrying shields and spears, and rear ranks of crossbowmen or archers. This appears to have been a continuation of Song practice and we classify them similarly.

It is during the Yuan period that gunpowder artillery starts to become a common feature of Chinese armies. Both small cannon and rockets were used in substantial numbers by the end of the dynasty, although man carried firearms remained relatively rare.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

Commanders should be depicted as guard cavalry. Before 1300 AD, the C-in-C could be depicted on an elephant.

- Guard and Mongol cavalry can always dismount. Light Horse dismount as Light Foot, Cavalry as Medium Foot. Armour, quality, training, and shooting and close combat capabilities are the same as when mounted.
- The minimum marked * only applies if infantry in mixed formations is not used.
- Javanese cannot be used with other allies nor with Southern tribal troops.
- Uighur or Mongol allies cannot be used with Southern tribal troops

| Yuan Chinese | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|--|-------------|----------|--------------|--------------|------------------------|--------------|-------------|-------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly, Steppes | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Guard cavalry | | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 24 | 4 | 0-4 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 21 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| Mongol cavalry | Before 1300AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 8-24 |
| | | | Average | Average | | | | 10 | | 0-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 14 | | | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 4-24 | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 11 | | | | |
| | From 1300AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-12 | 8-24 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Separately deployed spear- and dao-men | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 6-8 | *6-24 | |
| | | | | | | Heavy Weapon | | | | | |
| Crossbowmen in mixed formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 6-12 |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | Crossbow | Light Spear | 4 | 1/2 | | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| Separately deployed crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | | Poor | Undrilled | | | 4 | | | |
| Archers in mixed formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 6-18 |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear | 4 | 1/2 | | |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| Separately deployed archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | | Poor | Undrilled | | | 4 | | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|----------------------|-----------------|------------------------|----|-----|------|------|
| Chinese cavalry | Only before 1300AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | 12 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 10 | | | |
| Southern tribal cavalry | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | 8 | | | |
| Guard halberdiers | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 14 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| Anti-cavalry squads | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 4-8 | 0-8 | |
| Southern tribal foot | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | | | | | Impact Foot, Swordsmen | 7 | | | |
| Chinese or southern tribal skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled or Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | | | |
| Handgunners | Only from 1288AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Stone-throwers | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | 0-6 |
| Light guns | Only from 1300AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light Artillery | - | 17 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Portable rocket launchers | Only from 1340AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light Artillery | - | 17 | 2 | 0-4 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Jin allies (only before 1262 AD) – see Jurchen-Jin list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Javanese allies (only in 1293 AD) – see Medieval Indonesian or Malay list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Koryo Korean allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mongol allies – see Mongol Conquest list (before 1266 AD) or Book 2: Later Eastern Steppe Horse Cultures list (from 1266 AD) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Uighur allies (only before 1330 AD) – see Book 2: Later Eastern Steppe Horse Cultures list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Yuan Chinese Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Guard cavalry | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Mongol cavalry | Before 1300 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 10 | | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 16 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 14 | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| | From 1300 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| Unprotected | 11 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed spear- and dao-men | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm Heavy Weapon | 8 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Crossbowmen in mixed formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| Separately deployed crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| Archers in mixed formations | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| Separately deployed archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |

Late Byzantine

This list covers the Byzantine armies from the recovery of Constantinople in 1261AD. Armies can be either that of the Central Imperial state based at Constantinople (modern Istanbul), the Despotate of Epiros (in Albania and north-west Greece), the Despotate of the Morea (in the Greek Peloponnese), or the Empire of Trebizond (based at modern Trabzon on the south-east Black Sea coast).

The Despotate of Epiros was conquered by the Central State in 1340AD. Constantinople did not fall to the Turks until 1453AD, but no field army was available to the Central State after the end of the 14th Century. The Despotate of Morea was semi-independent from 1349AD, and finally fell to the Turks in 1460AD. Trebizond fell to the Turks in 1461AD.

Troop Notes

Kavallarioi were probably the descendants of Frankish mercenary knight. Sources of horse archers include Cumans, Turks, Alans, Vlachs, Bulgars, Lazoi and Tzanoi., depending on local availability. Sources of irregular foot included Vlachs, Slavs, Albanians, Lazoi and Tzanoi.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Byzantine cavalry.
- The minimum marked *does not apply to Central armies.

| Late Byzantine | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Kavallarioi | Only Central | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4-6 | | | |
| Byzantine cavalry | Any except Trebizond | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 4-16 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 10 | | | | |
| | Trebizond before 1440AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 14 | | | | |
| | Trebizond from 1440AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 16 | | | | |
| Irregular horse archers | Any except Morea | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 8-20 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 11 | 4-6 | 4-16 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | | |
| Regular archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 12-64 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 8 | | 6-12 | | |
| irregular archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 6 | | *6-24 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Vardariotai guards | Only Central | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 16 | | | | |
| Tzakones foot guards | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Catalan foot guards | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 11 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | | | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | | | | | |
| Byzantine spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | |
| Hillmen | Any except central | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-24 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 6 | 8-12 | 0-24 | | |
| Albanian cavaly | Only Epiros | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | - | | | | | | |
| | Only Morea | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | - | | | | | | |
| Frankish vassals | Only Morea | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| Frankish mercenaries | Only Epiros | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4 | | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | |

| Allies |
|---|
| Tartar allies (only Central from 1282AD to 1283AD) – see Mongol Conquest list |
| Ottoman Turkish allies (only Central from 1348AD and Morea from 1382AD) – see Ottoman Turkish list |
| Serbian allies (only Central from 1150 AD to 1180 AD) – see Later Serbian list |
| Turkish allies (only Central before 1348 and Trebizond after 1360AD) – Anatolian Turcoman |
| Angevin allies (only Epiros from 1276AD to 1291AD) – see Italo-Norman and Sicilian list |
| Byzantine allies (only Epiros from 1309AD to 1310AD) – see Later Byzantine (Central) list |
| Cuman allies (only until 1394AD) – see Cuman list |

| Late Byzantine Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core TroopsO | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Kavallarioi | Only Central | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4 | | |
| Byzantine cavalry | Any except Trebizond | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| | Trebizond before 1440AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 14 | | | |
| | Trebizond from 1440AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 16 | | | |
| Irregular horse archers | Any except Morea | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 0-8 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 11 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Regular archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6 | 0-6 | 6-24 |
| irregular archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |

Middle Plantagenet English

Edward I ascended the throne in 1272 AD following the death of his father Henry III. In 1276 AD he invaded Wales, conquered most of the country and left Llywelyn ap Gruffydd with only a rump of Gwynedd. In 1284 AD Wales was incorporated into England under the Statute of Rhuddlan.

Following the death of the Scots King Alexander III in 1286 AD, there was no direct male heir to the throne. Edward succeeded in betrothing his heir, Edward of Caernarfon, to Alexander's granddaughter Margaret (daughter of King Eirik II of Norway), but she died on the way from Norway to take the Scottish throne. To prevent civil war, the Scottish Guardians invited Edward to arbitrate between the rival claimants to the throne. He did so, but only on condition that he be recognised as Overlord of Scotland. King John Balliol was crowned in November 1292 AD, but Edward continued to undermine Scottish independence. In 1296 AD Edward invaded, and deposed King John. The First Scottish War of Independence followed, lasting until Edward III finally recognised Scottish independence in 1328 AD.

This list covers English armies from 1272 AD to 1320 AD.

Troop Notes

The main characteristic feature of English armies of this period was the fielding of large numbers of longbowmen. This seems to have been an innovation by Edward I following his Welsh wars. Initially most of the longbowmen were Welsh, but later in the period the longbow also became the main weapon of the English yeomanry. All freemen with 40-100 shillings worth of land were expected to serve with bow and sword, those with less with bow and whatever hand-to-hand weapons they could get, including knives, pole-arms such as gisarnes and fauchards and assorted peasant weapons. Most wore quilted gambesons (aketons). By this time the decline of the feudal system had drastically reduced the size of feudal knightly contingents, the shortfall being made up with paid mercenaries.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- No more than one allied contingent can be used.

| Middle Plantagenet English | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------------|--|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Royal household knights and sergeants | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 2 | 0-2 | 6-24 | |
| | | | Superior | | | | 29 | | | | |
| Feudal or mercenary knights and sergeants | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-18 | | |
| | | | Average | Undrilled | - | | 18 | 4-6 | 6-24 | | |
| | | | Average | Drilled | - | | 21 | | | | |
| Welsh or English archers | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-48 | 24-64 | |
| | | Unprotected | | | Longbow | - | 7 | | 16-64 | | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed sergeants or hobilaris | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 0-20 |
| | | | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| | | | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | 8-10 | 0-16 | |
| Gascon crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| Irish foot | Only in Britain or Ireland | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 5 | | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Medieval Irish allies – see Medieval Irish list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| North Welsh allies – see Medieval Welsh list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Middle Plantagenet English Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Feudal or mercenary knights and sergeants | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | | | Drilled | | | 21 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Welsh or English archers | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 8-24 |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | 8-24 | |
| | | Protected | | | Longbow | - | 7 | | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | | |

Swiss

This list covers Swiss armies from 1291 AD, when the Forest Cantons - Uri, Schwyz and Unterwalden - formed the Everlasting League, until 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

The Swiss fought in deep infantry columns. For the first hundred years of the period, they relied on their murderous halberds and their native terrain. At Morgarten (1315 AD) they ambushed the Austrians while they were in column of march along a lakeside path. The Austrians were massacred. Around the turn of the century the Swiss began to replace their halberds with pikes, which appear to have been more effective against both mounted and dismounted men-at-arms in open ground. By the time of Arbedo (1422 AD) about a third were armed with pikes, the remainder still having halberds.

By the mid-15th century, the Swiss had largely switched to pikes, attacking rapidly in huge columns. Each such column had a core of halberdiers who could sally out to cause mayhem if the column was halted. There were usually three such columns, the Vorhut (vanguard), Gewalthut (centre) and Nachhut (rearguard), attacking in echelon. The Vorhut usually included most of the army's crossbowmen and handgunners. Halberdiers in the centre of pike blocks are treated as pikemen.

As the confederacy expanded troops from some of the newer cantons were not always up to the high standard of the first armies and so the option for Average halbardiers and pikemen is allowed.

We rather generously allow the stones thrown by the "enfants perdus" at Laupen to be treated as javelins. Letzinen were stone barricades used to block roads so that the enemy could be halted and ambushed.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as halberdiers or pikemen.

| Swiss | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------|--|----------------------|-------------|----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Type: Mountains | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Halberdiers | Before 1425AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 11 | 8-12 | 24-60 | |
| | 1425AD to 1490AD | | | Superior | | | | 11 | 4-8 | 8-24 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 8 | | | |
| Pikemen | 1360AD to 1421AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 9 | 8-12 | 8-32 | |
| | From 1422AD | | | Superior | | | | 9 | | 12-40 | 24-60 |
| | | | | | | | | Average | | 6 | |
| Crossbowmen | Before 1476AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 6-18 | 12-24 |
| | From 1476AD | | | | | | | | | 0-8 | |
| Handgunners | 1400AD to 1475AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | From 1476AD | | | | | | | | | 6-18 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| "Enfant perdus" throwing stones | | Before 1360AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Javelins | - | 3 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Light guns | | From 1360AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Letzinen - stone barricades | | Before 1422AD | Field Fortifications | | | | | 3 | | 0-12 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Special Campaigns | | | | | | | | | | | |
| The Burgundian War 1476 AD to 1477 AD | | | | | | | | | | | |
| René, Duc de Lorraine (sub-commander) | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 40/30 | | 1 | |
| Knights and men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Militia | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 4 | 8-12 | 0-16 | |
| Between 1/3 and 1/2 of the pikemen and halberdier bases fielded must be Average or poor | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Swiss Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------|----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Halberdiers | Before 1425AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 11 | 8-12 | 8-24 |
| | 1425AD to 1490AD | | | Superior | | | | 11 | 4-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 8 | | |
| Pikemen | 1360AD to 1421AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 9 | 8-12 | 0-12 |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 9 | | 12-24 |
| | | | | From 1422AD | | | | Average | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| Handgunners | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 4 | 6-8 | |

Ottoman Turkish

With the decline of the Seljuk Sultanate of Rum and the Byzantine Empire in the later 13th century, Anatolia came to be divided between a number of effectively independent Turkish emirates. The most aggressive of these, in the far north-west, was ruled by Osman I (from whom the name Ottoman derives), son of Ertuğrul. From small beginnings, the Ottoman Beylik expanded rapidly at the expense of the Byzantines. In 1299 AD Osman Bey declared himself independent of the Seljuk sultanate. This list covers Ottoman armies from the traditional date of the foundation of the Ottoman Empire by Osman I in 1299 AD until 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

The Qapu Khalqi were the elite guard cavalry of the Ottoman army, forming up around the Sultan.

The corps of Janissaries (from *yeniçeri*, meaning new soldier) was founded circa 1362 by Murad I, and was initially recruited from Christian prisoners of war converted to Islam. By the end of the 14th century a second method of recruitment had been instituted, the *devşirme* - a levy of boys aged 12 to 16 from the conquered Christian territories. Separated from their families, these boys largely converted to Islam. Their own children would be Muslims and hence not eligible to become Janissaries, thus preventing the development of hereditary ties within the corps. Thus, in theory at least, the Janissary corps gave the Ottoman Sultans an unswervingly loyal standing army. The majority of Janissaries were bow armed until the end of our period.

The bulk of the heavy cavalry (*sipahis*) in the Ottoman army were supplied on a feudal basis by timariots. Each timariot held a non-hereditary land grant (*timar*), for which, depending on the value of his *timar*, he was expected to supply a specified number of fully equipped cavalymen.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Qapu Khalqi cavalry or Timariots.
- The minima marked * apply only if the Sultan is present.
- Serbian allies cannot include foot.

| Ottoman Turkish | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|--|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly, Developed | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Timariots | Before 1362AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-12 | 16-60 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 14 | | | |
| Ghazis | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 4-24 | |
| | | | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | | 8-40 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| Timariots | From 1362AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 8-24 | |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 14 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Akinjis | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 8-30 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 4-24 | |
| Janissaries | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 6-8 | *6-16 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| Azab archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 6-18 | 6-24 |
| | | Light foot | | | | | | | | 0-12 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Qapu Khalqi | From 1362AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 23 | 2-4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 20 | | | |
| Djanbazan | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Delis | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | | |
| Other Balkan cavalry | | | | Average | | | | 8 | | | |
| Turcomans or Crimean Tatars | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Bedouin Cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | | | |
| Kurds | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|------------------------|----|------|------|-----|--|
| Janissary slingers | From 1362AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Sling | - | 6 | 4 | 0-4 | 0-8 | |
| Janissary crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 8 | 4 | | | |
| Janissary handgunners | From 1430AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Firearm | - | 7 | 4 | | | |
| Azab handgunners | | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 5 | | | | |
| Azab slingers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Azab crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | | |
| Azab javelinmen | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | | |
| Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| Poorly equipped levies | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 8-12 | 0-12 | | |
| Balkan voynuks | From 1362AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| laylars | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Impact foot, Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Heavy guns | | Heavy artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-6 | 0-6 | |
| Light guns | | Light artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | | |
| Field defences | | FF | | | | | | 3 | | 0-8 | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Albanian allies (only before 1479 AD) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Crimean Tatar allies (only from 1475 AD) – see Mongol Conquest list | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Later Serbian allies (only before 1459 AD) – see Later Serbian list | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Anatolian Turkoman allies (only before 1468 AD) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Wallachian allies – see Moldavian or Wallachian allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Ottoman Turkish Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Timariots | Only before 1362 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 8-24 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 14 | | | |
| Ghazis | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | | 4-16 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| Timariots | Only from 1362 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 4-12 |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 14 | | 0-12 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Akinjis | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| Janissaries | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | Unprotected | | 9 | | | | | | | | |
| Azab archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |

Later Serbian

This list covers Serbian armies from 1300 AD to 1459 AD.

Troop Notes

Serbian heavy and light cavalry were charging lancers. Their better equipped heavy cavalry wore full knightly panoply, although armour styles lagged somewhat behind those in Western Europe.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as nobles.
- The minima marked * only applies if any non-allied foot are used.
- A Bosnian ally general can command only Bosnian troops, which can include border foot.
- Only one ally contingent can be used.

| Later Serbian | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly, Mountains | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Bosnian allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Serbian or Bosnian nobles | Before 1345 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 6-18 | 12-36 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 12 | | 6-30 | |
| | From 1345 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 30 | 2-3 | 0-3 | 6-12 |
| | | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | | | | Undrilled | | - | |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | | 18 | | |
| | | | Armoured | Superior | | | | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | |
| | Average | 16 | | | | | | | | | |
| Serbian light horse | Only from 1345 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-18 |
| | | Cavalry | | | | | | | | 0-18 | |
| Serbian, Bosnian, Croat, Moravian or Greek archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | *8-32 | *8-32 |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | | | | 5 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | |
| Cuman, Hungarian, Tatar or Turcoman mercenaries | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Wallachian mercenaries | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 10 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | 11 | | | | |
| Western mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Voynuks with spears | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Voynuks with polearms | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 9 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Border foot with mixed weapons | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Levies or baggage guards | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-12 | |
| Mercenary crossbowmen | Only from 1380 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Mercenary handgunners | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Light Guns | | Light artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Heavy Guns | Heavy artillery | Heavy Artillery | | | | - | 20 | | | | |

| Allies |
|---|
| Later Byzantine allies (only before 1380 AD) |
| Albanian allies (only from 1380 AD) |
| Early Hungarian allies (only from 1380 AD) – see Early Hungarian List |
| Ottoman Turkish allies (only from 1380 AD) – see Ottoman Turkish list |

| Later Serbian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------|-------------|-------|-----|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Serbian or Bosnian nobles | Before 1345 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-12 | 6-18 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 12 | | 6-18 | | |
| | From 1345 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | 4-12 | |
| | | | Armoured | | | | | 23 | 4-6 | | | |
| | | | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 | | |
| | | | Armoured | | | | | 16 | | | | |
| | Serbian light horse | Only from 1345 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 0-6 |
| | | | Cavalry | | | | | | | | 0-6 | |
| Serbian, Bosnian, Croat, Moravian or Greek archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | *6-16 | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | | |
| | | | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | | 6-8 |

Later Polish

In the 12th and 13th centuries Poland was fragmented between rival scions of the Piast dynasty. Władysław I the Elbow-High reunited much of the country in the early decades of the 14th century and was crowned King in 1320 AD. This list covers Polish armies from 1300 AD to 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

In the earlier part of the period, the knights were usually drawn up in a continuous line, usually 4 deep, with a second line of mounted crossbowmen (strzelcy – the knights' retainers) behind. Later, the battle line was organised into a number of separate banners, with gaps between. Each banner consisted of strzelcy surrounded by men-at-arms. The strzelcy shot from horse-back by volley to soften up the enemy prior to the charge.

After the start, in 1454 AD, of the 13 years' war against the Teutonic Order, standing companies were raised to replace the general feudal knightly levy. These had proved a liability by refusing to fight until the king agreed to their political demands, and then losing against a smaller force of Teutonics. In peacetime, a relatively small standing army was maintained, mainly in the eastern provinces, but in wartime their numbers were increased. They were categorised as Lancer banners or Volley banners. Lancer banners contained men-at-arms and mounted crossbowmen in the approximate ratio of 1:2. In Volley banners the ratio was more like 1:4 or 1:5.

Battle groups with a substantial proportion of lancers are treated as Superior. Where the proportion of strzelcy is higher, the battle group is treated as Average. The armour of later men-at-arms got progressively lighter as some strzelcy replaced their crossbows with lances, and gentry increasingly replaced knights.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as nobles.
- The total number of bases of separately deployed strzelcy cannot exceed the total number of bases of feudal nobles and strzelcy.
- The minimum marked * only applies before 1455 AD

| Later Polish | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-----|-------|------|------|--|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | | | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | | | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | | | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | | | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal Nobles | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 30 | | 2 | | 0-2 | | | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 26 | | 3-4 | | 0-8 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | | 4-6 | | 4-16 | | | |
| Feudal nobles and strzelcy | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | | 1/2 | 4-6 | 0-12 | | | |
| | | | Cavalry | | | Armoured | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 18 | | | | | 1/2 | |
| | | Protected | | | | 14 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | | 1/2 | 4-6 | *8-24 | | | |
| | | | Cavalry | | | Armoured | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | | | | | 1/2 | |
| | | Protected | | | | 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed strzelcy | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | | 4-6 | | | | 0-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 10 | | | | | | | |
| Lancer banners | From 1455AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | | 1/2 | 4-6 | 4-12 | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 19 | | 1/2 | | | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | | 1/2 | 4-6 | | | | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 19 | | 1/2 | | | | | |
| Volley banners | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | | 4-6 | | | | 4-16 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hungarians, Cumans, Tatars or other mercenary horse archers | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | 4-6 | | 0-6 | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | | | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | | | | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | 11 | | | | | | | | | |
| Lithuanian cavalry | Before 1386 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | | 4-6 | | 0-6 | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | | | | | | |
| | After 1386AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | | 4-6 | | 0-8 | 0-24 | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | | | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | | | 0-18 | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------|-----------------|----------|--------------------|----|-----|-----|------|
| Town militia with axes | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 6-8 | | 0-8 |
| Town militia crossbowmen and pavisiers | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-16 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| Mercenary knights | From 1386AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Serbian hussars | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | | | | | | | | | |
| Handgunners | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | | | | |
| Battle wagons | | Battle Wagons | - | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Pole Arm | 23 | 2-4 | 0-4 | |
| Light guns | Light artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | | |
| Wagon fortress | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-8 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Early Hungarian allies (only before 1440AD) – see Early Hungarian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Later Hungarian allies (only from 1440AD to 1470AD) – see Later Hungarian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Bohemian allies (only from 1471AD to 1474AD) – see Hussite list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Later Polish Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----|-------------|--|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Feudal Nobles | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | 0-6 | |
| Feudal nobles and strzelcy | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 1/2 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 18 | 1/2 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 14 | | | | |
| | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 1/2 | 4-6 | *4-12 | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | 1/2 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 10 | | | | |
| Separately deployed strzelcy | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | | 0-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 10 | | | | |
| Lancer banners | From 1455 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 1/2 | 4-6 | 4-10 | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 19 | | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 1/2 | | | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 19 | | | | |
| Volley banners | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | | | |

Later Low Countries

This list covers the armies of the Low Country communes from 1300 AD to 1477 AD. The armies of Maximilian of Austria in the Low Countries from 1478 AD to 1500 AD are covered by the Ordonnance Burgundian list.

Low Countries communal armies could win frontal battles against mounted men-at-arms when terrain secured their flanks. They won thus against the French at Courtrai (1302 AD). If, however, the enemy were able to threaten them from several directions, they could pin them in position. Like the Scots, they were then very vulnerable to archery. At Mons-en-Pevele (1304 AD) the French were able to get the bulk of their forces behind the Lowland phalanx, but the Lowlanders had taken the precaution of protecting their rear with their baggage wagons, so the battle ended in a bloody draw. At Cassel (1328 AD) an initial surprise attack by the Lowlanders on the French camps was repulsed with difficulty, thereafter the Lowlanders were surrounded and eventually routed. At Roosebeke (1382 AD) the French mounted attack enveloped the Flemish flanks and broke the phalanx. At Othée (1408 AD), the Burgundians surrounded the Liègeois phalanx and eventually routed it. At Rupelmonde (1452 AD) the Gauntois were eventually broken by the archery of the Burgundian longbowmen. At Gavere (1453 AD) a Burgundian archery barrage followed by a determined charge by mounted men-at-arms broke the Gauntois. At Brusthem (1467 AD) the Liègeois were defeated by the Burgundian combination of dismounted men-at-arms and longbowmen.

Troop Notes

Low country spearmen used very long spears but did not form up in especially deep formations at least until the mid-15th century. We therefore grade them as Offensive Spearmen rather than Pikemen. The plançon a picot was a long tapering club with an iron head and spike at the end. Several statutes were passed banning it, and it went out of favour at the end of the 14th century.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as men-at-arms.
- Feudal men-at-arms (whether graded as Superior or Average when mounted) can always dismount as Superior, Heavily Armoured, Undrilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- 'Drilled' Mercenary or Burgher men-at-arms can always dismount as Average, Heavily Armoured, Drilled, Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.

| Later Low Countries | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------|--|------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | Before 1465AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 4-12 | |
| | Average | | | 18 | | | | 4-6 | | | |
| | Any date | | | Average | | | | 17 | 4-6 | | |
| Mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | | Superior | Undrilled | | | 26 | 3-4 | | |
| Burgher men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | | |
| Spearmen | Before 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 8 | 8-12 | 30-72 | |
| | From 1450AD | | | | | | | | | 8-24 | 32-72 |
| Pikemen | | From 1450AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 24-56 |
| Plançon wielders or Halberdiers | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 4-8 | 6-12 | |
| | | | | | | | Pole Arm | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| English longbowmen | 1336AD to 1477AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow BG - from 1415AD | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | All longbow BGs or none | | |
| Handgunners | From 1410AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Light guns | From 1336AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-6 | |
| Field defences or wagon laager | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | 0-16 | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | 0-1 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Medieval French allies (only before 1406 AD) – see Medieval French list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Medieval German allies – see Later Medieval German list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Frisian allies – see Medieval Frisian or other Free Canton Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Later Low Countries Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | Only before 1465 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | |
| | Any date | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | |
| Mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | |
| | | | | Superior | Undrilled | | | 26 | 3-4 | |
| Burgher men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | |
| Spearmen | Only before 1450 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 8 | 8-12 | 12-32 |
| Pikemen | Only from 1450 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | |

Medieval Scandinavian

This list covers the armies of the Kingdom of Denmark and the Kingdom of Sweden from 1300 AD until the Union of Kalmar in 1397 AD when Denmark, Norway and Sweden were officially united under one crown, and then Union armies until 1500 AD. Armies must be selected as either Danish or Swedish before 1397 AD, or as Union armies from 1397 AD.

Troop Notes

Swedish peasant militia were particularly well armoured and effective, fighting in mixed units of men with crossbow or longbow and men with pole-arms, axes, spears etc. The proportion of pole-arms increased as time went on. The crossbow was far more common than the longbow. As it seems unlikely that crossbows and longbows were deployed in separate units, the mixture is treated as crossbows. Scandinavian armour styles were somewhat old-fashioned in the 14th century, but caught up with more modern European styles in the 15th. Ambushes were popular, timber barricades being used to block routes through woodland.

Danish and Union armies made much use of German mercenaries. Scandinavian armour styles were somewhat old-fashioned in the 14th century, but caught up with more modern European styles in the 15th. The select levy were armed with halberds or other pole-arms. The general levy was mostly armed with short spears.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as men-at-arms.
- * Swedish armies cannot use more than 1 battle group of Superior Feudal men-at-arms.
- 'Select levy or militia' in Swedish armies or Swedish allied contingents must have at least as many **bases** armed with crossbow as there are with longbow.
- The minimum marked ** only applies to Danish armies.
- After 1397AD Swedish 'select levy or militia' can be used as part of an allied contingent to a Union army.

| Medieval Scandinavian | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------|--------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodland, Hilly, Mountains | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | *0-10 | 4-16 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | 0-12 | |
| Select levy or militia | Only Danish or Union | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 10 | 1/2 or all | 6-8 | 8-36 | 16-48 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | | 1/2 or none | | | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Pole arm | 7 | 1/2 or all | | **8-16 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | | 1/2 or none | | | |
| | Only Swedish | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 10 | 1/2 or all | 6-8 | 24-60 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 10 | 1/2 or none | | | |
| | | | | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 11 | | | | |
| | Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| General levy | Only Union | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Defensive spearmen | 4 | 1/2, 2/3 or all | | 6-9 | 0-36 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 3 | 1/2, 1/3 or none | | | |
| | | | | | | Bow | | 3 | | | | |
| Separately deployed mounted attendants | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 8 | 4 | | 0-4 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 6 | | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | | 0-8 | |
| Mounted handgunners | From 1450AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Firearm | Swordsmen | 12 | 4 | | 0-4 | |
| German mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | | 0-8 | |
| German mercenary halberdiers | Before 1488AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| German mercenary pikemen | From 1488AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | | 0-24 | |
| Handgunners | Only Union | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4-6 | | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | | |
| Light guns | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | | 0-4 | 0-4 |
| Bombards | | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | | |
| Field defences | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | | 0-8 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | | 0-1 | |

| Allies |
|--|
| German allies – see Later Medieval German list |
| Swedish allies (only Union from 1397 AD; infantry only) – see Medieval Scandinavian list |

| Medieval Scandinavian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | *3-4 | | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | | | | |
| Select levy or militia | Danish or Union | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 10 | 1/2 or all | 6-8 | 6-16 | 6-24 |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | | 1/2 or none | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Pole arm | 9 | 1/2 or all | | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | Swordsmen | | 1/2 or none | | | |
| | Swedish | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole arm | 10 | 1/2 or all | 6-8 | 12-32 | |
| | | | | | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Crossbow | Swordsmen | | | |
| | | Longbow | 11 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Catalan Company

The Catalan Grand Company, or Company of the Army of the Franks in Romania as it was officially called, was founded by the former Templar Roger de Flor after the Peace of Caltabellotta in 1303 AD made redundant the soldiers from Catalonia and Aragon who had been fighting against the French dynasty of Anjou in Sicily. This list covers the Company from its departure from Sicily until the fall of the state it founded in Greece to the Florentines in 1388 AD.

Troop notes

Almughavars are described as lightly armoured and equipped with a couple of iron darts called "sagetes" or "escones", similar to the Roman pilum or the ancient Spanish soliferrum, a short sword or dagger, and a spear. Their fighting style relied on the effect of missiles combined with a fierce charge. Classification presents a problem – therefore we give a choice of classification. Drilled grading reflects the discipline and training gained after years of continuous service.

Muntaner, who was the Catalan Company's bookkeeper, details how much the Byzantines paid each "cavall armat" and each "cavall alforrat". The first were standard knights on eventually armoured horses, the second lighter knights on unarmoured horses riding a la jinete. In standard Catalan armies these "cavalls alforrats" usually fought mixed in the ranks of the heavier armoured knights, but their numbers in the Company were so high compared to those of the heavier knights that they had to fight on their own in a similar way to detached valets and other lighter knights of central European armies.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as cavalls armats.
- * Medium Foot almughavars must be classified as all offensive spearmen or all impact foot, swordsmen.

| Catalan Company | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cavalls armats | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 | 4-12 |
| Cavalls alforrats | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| *Almughavars | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 11 | 6-8 | 0-32 | 16-80 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | Impact Foot, Swordsmen | 11 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 8 | 6-8 | 16-64 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | Impact Foot, Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Almughavar skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Turks or Turcoples | Only from 1305 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 8-30 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | 4-30 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Albanians | Only from 1380 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 8 | | 0-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 0-16 |
| Greek archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 3 | 6-8 | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 3 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Later Byzantine allies (only before 1305 AD) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Alan allies (only before 1305 AD) – see Book 2: Early Alan list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Catalan Company Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Cavalls alforrats | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| *Almughavars | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 11 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 8-36 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 8 | 6-8 | 6-32 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Turks or Turcopoles | Only from 1305 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | 4-12 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Albanians | Only from 1380 AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 8 | | 0-6 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |

Condotta Italian

This list covers Italian armies from 1320 AD to 1500 AD. It differs from most other lists in having special sections to represent the additional options available to the major Italian states. These are: **Florence, Milan, Naples, Papal States** and **Venice**. Additionally, armies from **Venice** must be selected as either inside or outside Italy.

Troop Notes

Most men-at-arms were raised by contracts (condotte) with mercenary captains, though some (lanze spezzati) were hired individually by the state. Traditional communal militia infantry were neither enthusiastic nor highly regarded, and only Florence's out-of-date army made much use of them in the later part of the period. By then, most infantry were provisionati, paid soldiers hired directly by the state, though some were raised by condotte. Militia pavisier and crossbowmen battle groups represent several ranks of crossbowmen with a rank of spear-armed pavisiers in front. They are best depicted as front-rank bases of pavisier figures and rear rank bases of crossbowmen figures.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as men-at-arms.
- Except for Florentine armies, at least one third of the army's bases (not including commanders or allies) must be selected as mounted troops.
- Venetians outside Italy cannot use militia spearmen or pikemen.
- * At least 1 and up to 2 Italian allied contingents **MUST** be used by any state other than 'Venice outside Italy' which cannot use any allies.
- Italian allied contingents must include troops taken from the Condotta Italian Allies list. These count towards minima and maxima of the main list. They may also take troops from their own optional section - but cannot take more than 1 minimum sized battlegroup of each.
- Elmeti can always dismount as Average or Superior (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Drilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Famiglia di casa and famiglia fuori casa can always dismount as Superior, Heavily Armoured, Drilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Feudal or Dalmatian men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior, Heavily Armoured, Undrilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.

| Condotta Italian | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-2 | |
| Italian Allied Commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | *1-2 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Elmeti | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 11-48 |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 29 | 3-4 | 3-8 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4-6 | 8-40 | |
| Mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 4-16 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 4-16 | |
| | | | Armoured | | | | 12 | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4-8 | 0-12 | |
| Pikemen | From 1400AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| Billmen or halberdiers | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arms | 8 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Javelinmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| Swordsmen | | | | | | | - | Swordsmen | | | |
| Sword and buckler men | From 1416AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Impact Foot Skilled Swordsmen | 9 | 4-8 | | |
| | | | Armoured | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Handgunners | From 1400AD to 1439AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | From 1440AD | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Militia spearmen | Only before 1400AD or Florence at any date | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | 8-10 | 0-24 | |
| Militia pavisiers and crossbowmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | 1/2 | 6 | 0-12 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | |
| Organ guns | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Bombards | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Field fortifications | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-12 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |

| Florence only | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|------------------------|-----------------------|------|-------------|-----|
| Hungarians | Only before 1400AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| English archers | From 1400AD to 1440AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | | | | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of longbow BG - Only from 1415 AD | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | All or none | |
| Militia pikemen | From 1400AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 4 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| Milan only | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Famiglia di casa and famiglia fuori casa | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| Mercenary pikemen | From 1495AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-16 | |
| Naples only | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Guardsmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 10 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| Hungarians or Turks | Any date | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | From 1440AD | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | | |
| Aragonese crossbowmen | From 1420AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Archers | From 1440AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Papal States only | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Guardsmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 10 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| English archers | Before 1400AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Hungarians | Before 1440AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Venice only | | | | | | | | | | | |
| English archers | From 1400AD to 1440AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of longbow BG - Only from 1415 AD | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | 0 or 2 | |
| Archers | From 1440AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Stradiots | Inside Italy from 1440AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 0-8 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 8 | | 0-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| | | Outside Italy from 1440AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| | Cavalry | | Protected | - | | | Light Spear Swordsmen | | | | |
| | Turks | From 1440 AD | Light Horse or Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| Dalmatian men-at-arms (Only outside Italy) | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Swiss mercenary allies (only Florence in 1424 AD) – see Swiss list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Albanian allies (only Naples) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Swiss mercenary allies (only Venice in Italy from 1440 AD) – see Swiss list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Condotta Italian Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Elmeti | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 4-16 |
| | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4-6 | 4-16 | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | 0-8 |
| | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | Armoured | | | | | 12 | | | |

Late Plantagenet English (Continental)

This list covers English armies on the continent from 1320 AD to Edward IV's French expedition as part of his alliance with Burgundy in 1475 AD, and also his Scottish expedition led by his brother Richard Duke of Gloucester, in 1481/2 AD. These armies were raised by the extensive use of indentures to provide a professional contract army, although at the start of the period troops raised by the traditional commission of array were still in use; the Crecy campaign and the subsequent siege of Calais being one of the last times they appeared in numbers.

Troop Notes

English and Gascon men-at-arms almost invariably fought on foot. The proportion of well-equipped men-at-arms to less well-equipped diminished as time went by. As they fought in mixed battle groups, they are graded according to the proportion in the mix. English men-at-arms did occasionally fight mounted, though as this was no longer common, we only allow them to be classified as Average when mounted.

Over the course of the period of this list the number of English men-at-arms fielded fell, and by the time of Edward IV's expedition of 1475 AD the ratio of men-at-arms to longbowmen was about 1:8 - although they may have been supplemented by a number of "other spears" who would presumably be lesser armoured based on their indenture pay rates.

Longbowmen were armed with a variety of weapons including swords, hatchets, axes and mauls, which they were not afraid to use. We treat them as equivalent to Swordsmen. Similarly, their armour varied widely, from none at all to half plate armour. We treat this mixture as equivalent to Protected.

Hobilar were primarily mounted infantry, so count as Poor while mounted though they dismount as Average. Combined battlegroups of men-at-arms and longbowmen represent small groups of each working closely together under the command of a single officer.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as mounted or dismounted men-at-arms.
- English mounted men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior, Heavily Armoured, Drilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Gascon mounted men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Undrilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Hobilar can always dismount as Average, Protected, Drilled, Medium Foot - Defensive Spearmen.
- Battlegroups entirely of men-at-arms can interpenetrate battlegroups entirely of longbowmen and vice versa.
- Gascons cannot be used with German or Flemish allies. If a Flemish ally contingent is used, a German ally contingent must also be used.
- Combined men-at-arms and longbow battlegroups have a number of special rules:
 - * Combined battlegroups must be selected as having 2 bases of men-at-arms bases and 4 bases of longbowmen. These are deducted from the number of permitted bases of indentured longbowmen and English dismounted men-at-arms.
 - Longbowmen in combined battlegroups count as heavy foot for all purposes (movement, combat and cohesion tests) unless all men-at-arms in the battlegroup have been removed as casualties, after which they count as Medium Foot. They always shoot as if Medium Foot.
 - When in or changing to a formation 2 bases wide, the bases of men-at-arms must all be either in the front rank or in the back rank. Men-at-arms may be exchanged with longbow bases in the front rank or the back rank by passing a *Complex Move Test* in their own movement phase (even if in combat). The front edge of the battlegroup remains in the same location.
 - When in or changing to a formation 3 bases wide all bases of men-at-arms must be placed in the centre file.
 - **No expansion or contraction is permitted whilst in combat – but the entire BG may slide one base sideways to meet an overlap, if by doing so it would receive more combat dice in melee (i.e. it is feeding more bases into combat).**
 - Combined battlegroups may not be provided with stakes.

| Late Plantagenet English (Continental) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------|--|------------------|----------|--------------|----------|--------------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--------------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | | | | | Close Combat |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Veteran men-at-arms | | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 20 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| English mounted men-at-arms | Before 1350AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-12 | 8-24 |
| English dismounted men-at-arms and "other spears". | | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 17 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 14 | | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 10 | | 0-12 | |
| Commission of array or similar longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 12-48 | |
| | | | Protected | | | Longbow | - | 7 | | | |
| | Unprotected | | 6 | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|----|----------------------------|-------|-------|
| English mounted men-at-arms | From 1350AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 4-12 |
| English dismounted men-at-arms | | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 17 | 4-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Armoured | | | | | 14 | | 0-8 | |
| | | Armoured | Average | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 0-8 | | | | |
| Indentured longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 16-40 | |
| Combined battlegroups of men-at-arms and indentured longbowmen | From 1350AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 2 | 6 | *0-18 |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 4 | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each BG entirely armed with longbow - only from 1415AD | | | Portable defences | | | | | 3 | All MF longbow BGs or none | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Gascon mounted men-at-arms | Before 1454AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 | 0-16 |
| Gascon dismounted men-at-arms | | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | | | | 15 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | Armoured | Superior | 13 | 0-8 | | | | | |
| | | | Armoured | Average | 9 | 0-8 | | | | | |
| Hobilaris | Before 1350AD | Cavalry | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Swordsmen | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Gascon crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Gascon bidets, Irish kerns or Bretons | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Gascon brigans | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Gascon or other town militia | Before 1454AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Welsh spearmen | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| German "pauncenar" spearmen | Before 1350 AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Irish horse | From 1415AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Light guns | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Bombards | From 1415AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | | |
| Field fortifications | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-8 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Medieval German allies (only from 1339 AD to 1340 AD) – see Later Medieval German list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Flemish allies (only in 1340 AD) – see Later Low Countries list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Burgundian allies (only from 1420 AD to 1431 AD) – see Medieval French list (Burgundian options) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ordonnance Burgundian allies (only in 1475 AD) – see Ordonnance Burgundian list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Late Plantagenet English (Continental) Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| English mounted men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-8 | |
| English dismounted men-at-arms and "other spears". | Only before 1350AD | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 17 | 4 | | |
| | | | Armoured | Superior | | | | 15 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 10 | | | |
| Commission of array or similar longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 6-16 | |
| | | | Protected | | | Longbow | - | 7 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | Longbow | - | 6 | | | |
| English mounted men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| English dismounted men-at-arms | Only from 1350AD | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 17 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 14 | | | |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 10 | | | |
| Indentured longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 6-16 | |
| Combined battle groups of men-at-arms and indentured longbowmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 2 | 6 | *0-6 |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 4 | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each BG entirely armed with longbow - only from 1415AD | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | All MF longbow BGs or none | | |

Late Plantagenet and Early Tudor English (Britain)

This list covers those English armies from 1320 AD which were raised mainly by commissions of array or ad hoc local measures. It includes the armies of the Wars of the Roses from 1455 AD to 1483 AD and then those of Henry VII until 1500 AD including rebellions against him. Unlike the armies raised for use against foreign enemies these armies do not appear to have been raised by indenture (a process that took time along with the massive logistical arrangements for such campaigns). Before 1455AD armies must be designated as Northern (those raised close to Scotland) or Southern (all others). From 1455AD to 1483AD as Lancastrian (includes Henry Tudor in 1483AD) or Yorkist. From 1484AD to 1500AD as Royal or Rebel.

Troop Notes

Troops were raised for specific, usually short, campaigns, and would not have time to come up to the drilled standard of the indenture armies. Possible exceptions are those who had seen service in foreign wars and the bodies of mounted archers which were sometimes fielded. These could be quite numerous, such as the 3,000 mounted archers said to be in the army mustered before the Battle of Neville's Cross. Additionally, unlike those armies raised by indenture commanders had much less opportunity to determine the troops they had. The main effect of this was that armies would often have a lower proportion of archers and would contain a higher number of troops armed with various stave weapons such as bills and spears. Spears appear to have been more prevalent in the north and Wales justifying some Spearmen battlegroups in such armies. Men-at-arms usually fought on foot, though a small number were sometimes kept mounted. As this was not common for most of the period of this list, we only allow them to be classified as Average when mounted. However, towards the end of the C15th there was a move back to fighting mounted. Richard III's cavalry charge at Bosworth in 1483 AD may reflect this trend. Certainly, early in his reign Richard purchased 167 full Italian harnesses at great cost, presumably for his retinue, which would have been more optimised for fighting mounted than on foot. In the later part of the list, we allow a single battle group of Superior mounted men-at-arms to reflect this possibility.

Hobilars were primarily mounted infantry, so count as Poor while mounted though they dismount as Average. Armies, especially in the Wars of the Roses, were sometimes hampered by rivalries between the commanders. To reflect this, we have included the option for allied commanders in the list.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as mounted or dismounted men-at-arms.
- An English allied commander's contingent must conform to the Late Plantagenet and Early Tudor allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Mounted men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Undrilled, Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Hobilars can always dismount as Average, Protected, Undrilled, Medium Foot - Defensive spearmen.
- Battlegroups entirely of men-at-arms or billmen can interpenetrate battlegroups entirely of longbowmen and vice versa.
- Welsh cannot be used with Northern Border horse or Northern spearmen.
- Scottish allies cannot be used with any Irish or Welsh.
- Combined men-at-arms and longbow battlegroups have a number of special rules:
 - * Combined battlegroups must be selected as having 2 bases of men-at-arms bases and 4 bases of longbowmen. These are deducted from the permitted bases of indentured longbowmen and English dismounted men-at-arms.
 - Longbowmen in combined battlegroups count as heavy foot for all purposes (movement, combat and cohesion tests) unless all men-at-arms in the battlegroup have been removed as casualties, after which they count as Medium Foot. They always shoot as if Medium Foot.
 - When in or changing to a formation 2 bases wide, the bases of men-at-arms must all be either in the front rank or in the back rank. Men-at-arms may be exchanged with longbow bases in the front rank or the back rank by passing a *Complex Move Test* in their own movement phase (even if in combat). The front edge of the battlegroup remains in the same location.
 - When in or changing to a formation 3 bases wide all bases of men-at-arms must be placed in the centre file.
 - **No expansion or contraction is permitted whilst in combat – but the entire BG may slide one base sideways to meet an overlap, if by doing so it would receive more combat dice in melee (i.e. it is feeding more bases into combat).**
 - Combined battlegroups may not be provided with stakes.

| Later Plantagenet and Early Tudor English (Britain) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-----|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Allied commander | | Troop Commander/Field Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 0-2 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Northern spearmen | Only Northern or Lancastrian armies before 1465 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Dismounted men-at-arms, billmen and spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 17 | 4-6 | 6-12 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 15 | | | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 14 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 13 | | | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 4-8 | 6-20 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 9 | | | 0-8 |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|----|-------------------------|------------|-------|
| Longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 8-32 | 16-64 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | 8 | | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 8-32 | |
| | | | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | | | 4 | | 0-16 | |
| Combined battle groups of men-at-arms and longbowmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 2 | 6 | *0-30 |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 4 | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each BG entirely armed with longbow - only from 1415AD | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | All longbow BGs or none | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hobilars | Only before 1350 AD | Cavalry | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 6 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Curros, prickers or demi-lances | Only from 1455 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | | |
| French crossbowmen | Only Lancastrian armies | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Mounted men-at-arms | Any | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 | Up to 1 BG | |
| | Only Royal or Yorkist armies from 1481 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 2, 3 or 4 | | |
| Northern border horse or staves | Northern armies, Lancastrian armies before 1465 AD or Royal armies | Light Horse or Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | | | |
| Welsh spearmen | Only Southern or Lancastrian armies, or Yorkist armies before 1465 AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| Irish | Only Lancastrian or Rebel armies | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 8-12 | 0-24 | 0-24 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Mercenary pikemen | Only Lancastrian armies in 1483 AD or Rebel armies | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-16 | |
| Mercenary handgunners | Only Yorkist or Rebel armies | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 6 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Light guns | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Bombards | Only from 1415 AD | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | | |
| Field fortifications | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-8 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scottish allies (only Lancastrian armies before 1465 AD) – see Medieval Scots list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Spanish allies (only Royal armies from 1489 AD to 1492 AD) – see Santa Hermandad Nueva Castilian list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Later Plantagenet and Early Tudor English (Britain) Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------|--------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Northern spearmen | Only Northern or Lancastrian armies before 1465 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 4-12 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| Dismounted men-at-arms, billmen and spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 17 | 4-6 | 4-8 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 15 | | | | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 14 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 13 | | | | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 9 | | | | |
| Longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | 6-24 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 8 | | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| Combined battle groups of men-at-arms and longbowmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 2 | 6 | * 0-12 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 4 | | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each BG entirely armed with longbow - only from 1415AD | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | All longbow BGs or none | | | |

Ming Chinese

The Ming dynasty is unique amongst the major Chinese dynasties that unified China in that it originated in the south rather than in the north. This reflected the growing prosperity and increasing population of the region following centuries of warfare raging across the north China plains. The Ming founder, Zhu Yuanzhang, was by birth a peasant from a very poor family. Most of his immediate family starved to death and he survived by joining a Buddhist monastery.

Zhu Yuanzhang started his rebellion against the Yuan in 1356 AD and proclaimed the start of his Ming dynasty in 1368 AD in his then capital of Nanjing, taking the reign title Hongwu, "Overflowing Martiality". From this he is known as the Hongwu Emperor. Following this proclamation, he sent his armies to conquer the north, especially the Yuan capital Dadu which was quickly captured and renamed Beiping, "The North is Conquered". The name was later changed in the reign of the third Ming emperor to its modern name of Beijing, "Northern Capital".

This list covers the armies of Ming dynasty China from 1356 AD to 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Mixed infantry battle groups represent troops depicted with a front rank of men carrying shields and spears, and rear ranks of crossbowmen or archers. This appears to have been a continuation of Song practice and we classify them similarly.

Ming armies continued to expand the number and range of gunpowder weapons in use and formed bodies of infantry using handguns started to appear, although in limited numbers. It is probable that the widespread adoption of handguns by the infantry was held back by their relative lack of effect against Mongol cavalry, which remained the most dangerous enemy of the Ming throughout this period. The Great Wall may be one way that the Chinese attempted to maximise the effect of their technology and at the same time limit the Mongols' own advantages.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as guard cavalry.
- The minima marked * apply if no infantry in mixed formations are used.
- Mongol allies cannot be used with Burman or Shan allies or Southern tribesmen.

| Ming Chinese | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|--|-------------------------------------|-----------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly, Tropical | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Chinese cavalry | Before 1450AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 8-20 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | | |
| | From 1450AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 6-12 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | 4-12 | | |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | 11 | | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 9 | | | | |
| | | | | Mongol or Jurchen cavalry | | | | Light Horse | | | | Unprotected |
| Undrilled | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | | |
| | Protected | | Undrilled | | | | 15 | | | | | |
| | Unprotected | | Undrilled | | | | 13 | | | | | |
| | | | Separately deployed Chinese spear- and dao-men | | | | Before 1450AD | | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average |
| Any date | Average | Undrilled | | | - | Pole Arm | 7 | 8-10 | 0-32 | | | |
| | Poor | | | | | | 5 | | | | | |
| | Chinese crossbowmen in mixed formations | | | Before 1450AD | | | Medium Foot | | | | | Protected |
| Any date | | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 1/2 | | | | | | |
| | | | | Light Spear | | 1/2 | | | | | | |
| | | | | - | | 1/2 | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed Chinese crossbowmen | Before 1450AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 0-12 | |
| | Any date | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | 0-18 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| | | | | Chinese archers in mixed formations | | | | Before 1450AD | | | | |
| Any date | Undrilled | Bow | - | | 6 | 1/2 | | | | | | |
| | | | Light Spear | | | 1/2 | | | | | | |
| | | | - | | | 1/2 | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed Chinese archers | Before 1450AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 0-12 | |
| | Any date | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | 0-24 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|----------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|----|-------|------|
| Guard cavalry | Before 1450AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-12 |
| | From 1450AD | | | | | | | | | 0-6 |
| Chinese anti-cavalry squads | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 4-8 | 0-12 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 7 | | |
| Chinese handgunners | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 6-8 | |
| Southern tribal foot | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | | |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear | 5 | | |
| Chinese or southern tribal skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | Crossbow | | | | |
| Chinese militia | Only from 1450 AD | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-24 |
| Portable rocket launchers or Light guns | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light Artillery | - | 17 | 2 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 15 | | |
| Heavy rocket launchers or Stone-throwers | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-4 |
| Palisades | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-24 |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Burman or Shan allies (Only from 1440 AD – 1454 AD) – see Medieval Burmese list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mongol allies – see Book 2: Later Eastern Steppe Horse Cultures list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Lan Xang Allies (Only from 1421AD to 1428AD) – See Lan Xang list | | | | | | | | | | |

| Ming Chinese Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|-----|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Chinese cavalry | Before 1450AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 4-8 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | | |
| | From 1450AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4-6 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | | |
| Mongol or Jurchen cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | | | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 11 | | | | |
| | | | | | Protected | | | Undrilled | | | | 10 |
| | | | | | Unprotected | | | Undrilled | | | | |
| Separately deployed Chinese spear- and dao-men | Before 1450AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 6-8 | *6-8 | *6-12 | |
| | Any date | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 7 | | 0-12 | | |
| Chinese crossbowmen in mixed formations | Before 1450 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | | - | | 1/2 | | | | | |
| | Any date | | | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Light Spear | 6 | 1/2 | | | |
| | | | | | | | - | | 1/2 | | | |
| Separately deployed Chinese crossbowmen | Before 1450 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 6-16 | | |
| | Any date | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | |
| Chinese archers in mixed formations | Before 1450 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Light Spear | 7 | 1/2 | | | 6-8 |
| | | | | | - | | 1/2 | | | | | |
| | Any date | | | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear | 6 | 1/2 | | | | |
| | | | | | | - | | 1/2 | | | | |
| Separately deployed Chinese archers | Before 1450 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | | |
| | Any date | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | |

Timurid, Black Sheep Turcoman or White Sheep Turcoman

This list covers the Timurids from 1360 AD until 1500 AD, the Black Sheep Turcomans (Qara-Qoyunlu) from 1378 AD until 1469 AD, and the White Sheep Turcomans (Aq-Qoyunlu) from 1402 AD until 1500 AD.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as drilled cavalry.
- Drilled cavalry and Timurid guard cavalry can always dismount as Elite, Superior or Average (as mounted type), Armoured, Drilled, Medium Foot – Bow, Swordsmen.

| Timurid, Black Sheep or White Sheep Turcoman | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Steppes | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Drilled cavalry | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-18 | 12-30 |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 15 | | 8-30 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | |
| Turcoman tribal cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-16 | 4-24 |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | | 0-16 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Timurid guard cavalry | Only Timurid | Cavalry | Armoured | Elite | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Other Georgian, Persian or Turcoman heavy cavalry | | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 14 | | 0-12 | |
| Kurdish cavalry | Only Black or White Sheep Turcoman | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | | | Armoured | Average | | | | 12 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| Well-equipped foot archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Other foot archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |
| Hillmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| Handgunners | Only from 1470 AD | Light foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Women disguised as warriors to protect camp | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-12 | |
| Elephants | Only Timurids | Elephants | - | Superior | Undrilled | - | - | 35 | 2 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 25 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 20 | | | |
| Stone throwers or heavy guns | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Timurids | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Black Sheep or White Sheep Turcoman allies – see Timurid, Black Sheep or White Sheep Turcoman list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Uzbek allies – see Book 2: Later Eastern Steppe Horse Culture list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only White Sheep | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Georgian allies – see Book 2: Georgian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Anatolian Turcoman allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Black Sheep | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Later Byzantine allies | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Timurid, Black Sheep or White Sheep Turcoman Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Drilled cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 6-20 |
| | | Armoured | Average | | | | 15 | | 4-12 | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | |
| Turcoman tribal cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |

Aztec

By 1300 AD in Central America there had been a slow recovery from a post classical dark age. Political organisation was by city state throughout most of the region, although the arid north of modern-day Mexico was dominated by wandering Chichimec tribes. One of those tribes, calling themselves the Mexica (whom we know, owing to a misunderstanding by the Spanish, as the Aztecs) had been allowed to settle on a swampy island in the brackish waters of Lake Mexico as subjects of the Tepanec Empire (which was ruled from Azcapotzalco on the western shore). There they founded the island city of Tenochtitlan in 1325 AD. Tlacopan was one of the subject cities of the Tepanec Empire on the western shore close to Tenochtitlan. On the eastern shore were a number of cities of Acolhua ethnicity, including Tetzaco. Over time Tepanec rule spread to include Tetzaco and a number of other cities on the eastern shore of the lake.

This list covers Aztec armies from 1375 AD to 1500 AD

Troop Notes

The rise of the Aztecs coincided with a change of the weapons used in the region. The bow (*tlahuitolli*) gave a longer range than the sling or the spear thrower (*atlatl*) though these were still used. Obsidian (volcanic glass) edged broadswords (*macuahuitl*) and cutting spears (*tepoztopilli*) replaced the earlier system of heavy clubbing weapons though these were still used to some degree.

Aztec shields were recorded by Spanish sources as strong, and were between 51-76 cm (20-30 ins) in diameter, sometimes with a feather decorated fringe below. Many of the warriors wore quilted cotton body armour under their decorative war suits. However, some at least chose to fight naked apart from their shields.

The *Calpolli* or City ward was the standard mean of organising and training the bulk of the army. Promotion was based on captives taken (for later sacrifice) and brave deeds. Experienced warriors gained the right to clothing and shields covered in bright feather work and wore helmets of carved wood painted to represent eagles and jaguars. Eagle and Jaguar military societies were reserved for warriors who had taken at least four captives. Jaguar society warriors are more common than Eagle society warriors in pictorial sources, and Eagle warriors are frequently depicted as more senior commanders; so it seems that they held some sort of seniority over the Jaguars. Military society battle groups can be assumed to include a proportion of less experienced noble warriors.

Warriors would reach the rank of *Otontin* with five captives, and *Cuachicqueh* with six. These senior warriors could either fight in their own units or stiffen the ranks of less experienced warriors.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as military societies, though other figures can be mixed in.
- Triple Alliance troops from Tlacopan or Tetzaco can be assumed to be amongst the troops comprising the main army, or can be used under ally commanders. In the latter case, each Triple Alliance ally-commander's contingent must conform to the Aztec allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main Aztec list.
- Central American allies can be used under an ally-commander as per normal. Alternatively, they can be incorporated in the main army, and count in line of command of C-in-C and sub-commanders. If this option is used an ally commander cannot be used with these troops (although another allied contingent could have one), and the minima for both main list and Central American allies list apply.

| Aztec | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---------------------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Triple Alliance ally commanders | Only from 1427 AD | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | 30/20 | | 0-2 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cuachicqueh | Medium Foot | Protected | Elite | Drilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 14 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| Military societies or Otontin | | | Superior | | | | 12 | | 8-36 | |
| Calpolli foot | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 16-60 | 16-84 |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 8 | | 8-10 | |
| Slingers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 6-24 |
| Archers | | | | | Bow | - | 5 | | 0-16 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Archers | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Pits, barricades, stone walls | Field Fortifications | - | - | - | - | - | 3 | - | 0-8 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Central American Allies (up to 2 contingents) (Only from 1427 AD) | | | | | | | | | | |

| Aztec Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Cuachicqueh | Medium Foot | Protected | Elite | Drilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 14 | 6 | 0-6 |
| Military societies or Otontin | | | Superior | | | | 12 | 6-8 | 6-12 |
| Calpolli foot | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 8-30 |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 8 | 8-10 | 0-10 |
| Slingers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Archers | | | | | Bow | - | 5 | | |

Yi Korean

During the Yi Dynasty era, the Koreans had military conflicts with various neighbours including Japan, nomadic tribes from Manchuria, Ming dynasty China and various warlords fleeing from China. Political instability in those countries had a ripple effect on Korea. As long as conditions were quiet in China, the border with Korea remained calm. However, when rebellions occurred, various refugees and rebel remnants crossed the border. These crossings were followed by Ming threats and demands for the refugees' return. As a result, sometimes the Koreans would have to conduct campaigns against these bands and/or defend against Ming retaliatory raids.

Stability in Japan meant that Japanese shoguns would consider campaigns against China or Korea. As long as the Japanese were involved with factional fighting, only Japanese pirate raids would threaten Korea. Likewise in Manchuria, as long as the nomadic tribes were divided, only light raiding activities affected the Korean border areas. Once the tribes were united, as under the Manchus, then serious invasions of Korea could be expected.

In regards to the strict Korean social caste system, one advantage of having the Yang-ban, a military professional class, was that military training and attendance at military schools was provided to all designated youth. This resulted in a high level of military training for Korean soldiers. One disadvantage of the caste system is that it was almost impossible for a soldier to be promoted above his station based on merit or valour.

This list covers Yi Korean armies from 1388 to 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Until the reforms of 1400, the Yi Dynasty used Koryo military formations. The Yi military underwent further reforms between 1457 and 1464. At this time the special To-bang, Tae-gak and private armies were outlawed and replaced with a new smaller "soldier" class. This was supported by more extensive conscription laws.

The highest troop classification were bodyguards who acted as government policemen rather than soldiers and were regarded as highly loyal but poor combat troops. The Yang-ban provided the next level of troops who were regarded as the best warriors. These troops, often referred to as "armoured soldiers", were brigaded in elite units and assigned either to the capital or to the frontier. They would often fight mounted (depicted charging in a wedge in many paintings) and would have the best armour and equipment. The third level was the common soldiers. By 1469, these were full-time volunteers from the lower social classes. They were often deployed as garrison troops in the less threatened regions or to supplement the garrison of a vital region. The fourth level was the conscripts who were often impressed into service only under emergency conditions. They were trained mainly as "spearmen" though some operated as archers.

"Spearmen" used a mixture of conventional spears, halberds and trident headed tri-spears. We classify the mixture as Pole Arms. Classification of "soldiers" is based on several drawings of troops from the Yi era who are armed with a tri-spear and bow, and shown in battle scenes using a long sword. Protected troops wear armour under their outer garments.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as guards.
- The total number of bases of Kwang-gun foot in the army cannot exceed the total number of bases of conscript foot by more than 50%.
- Kwang-gun mixed battle groups can be half "spearmen", half archers or half "spearmen", half crossbowmen.
- The total number of bases of Kwang-gun "spearmen" in the army cannot exceed the total number of Kwang-gun archers and crossbowmen.
- The total number of bases of Kwang-gun Medium Foot crossbowmen in the army cannot exceed the number of bases of Kwang-gun Medium Foot archers.
- "Soldiers" cannot be used with To-bang or Tae-gak guards.

| Yi Korean | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Developed, Mountains, Hilly, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80//40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Guard cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 4-12 | 8-40 |
| | | | Average | | | | 13 | | | |
| Light cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| Kwang-gun cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 13 | 4-8 | 4-18 | |
| Nomad nobles | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| Other nomad mercenaries | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | | |
| Irregular cavalry | Cavalry | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 4 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|----|-------|------|-------|--|
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun "spearmen" | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 6-8 | | 6-24 | |
| Kwang-gun "spearmen" in mixed battle groups | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 6-24 | |
| Kwang-gun archers or crossbowmen in mixed battle groups | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 1/2 | | | |
| | | | | Crossbow | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun archers or crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 6-24 | |
| | | | | Crossbow | | | | | | | |
| Conscript "spearmen" | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 4 | 1/2 | 8-10 | 10-50 | |
| Conscript archers | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 3 | 1/2 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Skirmishers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |
| | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 1/2 | | | |
| Foot Nomads | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| Conscript skirmishing archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 3 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| To-bang Guard | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| Tae-gak Guard | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 9 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| "Soldiers" | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | | 0-16 | |
| Peasants | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | | 0-24 | |
| Handgunners | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearms | - | 4 | 4 | | 0-4 | |
| Stone-Throwers | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | 0-4 | |
| Bolt-shooters | | | | | | | | | 0-4 | | |
| Field fortifications | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | | 0-24 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Nomad allies – Later Horse Nomad | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Chinese allies – Ming Chinese | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Yi Korean Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Guard cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 4-16 |
| | | | Average | | | | 13 | | | |
| Light cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| Kwang-gun cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 13 | 4-8 | 4-8 | |
| Other nomad mercenaries | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | | |
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun "spearmen" | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 6-8 | | 0-8 |
| Kwang-gun "spearmen" in mixed battle groups | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 8 | 1/2 | 6-8 | |
| Kwang-gun archers or crossbowmen in mixed battle groups | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 1/2 | | 0-8 |
| | | | | | Crossbow | | | | | |
| Separately deployed Kwang-gun archers or crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | | | Crossbow | | | | | |
| Conscript "spearmen" | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 4 | 1/2 | 8-10 | 0-20 |
| Conscript archers | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 3 | 1/2 | | |

Tupí

The list covers the cannibalistic coastal Brazilian tribes collectively known as Tupí, from 1400 AD to 1500 AD. These included the Tupinambá (including the Tamoyo and Ararape), the Tupinikin, Tobayara, Potiguara, Tupina, Temiminó and Caeté. The various tribes were in a constant state of war with each other.

Troop Notes

The principal weapon of the Tupí was a powerful longbow made from red or black wood. Prior to the 16th century, however, their arrows were tipped with fish or animal teeth, bone or fire-hardened wood, so they did not have the armour-piercing characteristics of European longbows shooting iron or steel bodkin-headed arrows. Hence their historical effect is best represented by classification as normal Bows.

For close combat, the typical weapon was a heavy paddle-shaped club (*tacape*), once again made from red or black wood. This could be up to 1.5-1.8 metres (5-6 foot) in length, and was usually wielded with both hands. Its paddle-blade-like head had sharpened edges.

Some tribes used round or long shields as a defence against enemy arrows.

Tupí partially shaved their heads, and fought naked apart from tattoos, body paint, various brightly-coloured feather adornments, necklaces of human teeth or snail shells, and bone or white, blue or green stone lip, cheek, eyebrow, nose or ear plugs.

They preferred ambushes and surprise night attacks. Early 16th century European writers remark on their lack of discipline and disorderly mode of fighting. When a pitched battle occurred, they formed up in one large phalanx. After an exchange of arrows - during which wounded men often pulled out the arrows and continued fighting - they charged one another "like bulls" and laid about themselves with mighty blows of their two-handed clubs. Prisoners were ritually killed and eaten, sometimes after a long period of captivity.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as veteran warriors.
- Tupí ally-commanders' contingents must conform to the Tupí allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- Warriors can be armed with Pole Arms or Heavy Weapons, but all bases in a battle group must be armed the same.

| Tupí | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Tropical, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 40/30 | 0-2 | | |
| Tupí ally commanders | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Warriors | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Pole arm or Heavy Weapon | 8 | 8-10 | 30-96 | 30-96 |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Veteran warriors | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | | | | 11 | 6-8 | 0-30 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Skirmishers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |

| Tupí Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Warriors | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Pole arm or Heavy Weapon | 8 | 8-10 | 12-40 | 12-40 |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Veteran warriors | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | | | | 11 | 6-8 | 0-16 | |

Medieval Scottish (in France)

This list covers the Scottish mercenary armies operating in France and Burgundy from 1418 AD to 1429 AD.

Troop Notes

Records show that unlike Scottish "home" armies these contingents were made up along the lines of contemporary English armies with archers outnumbering men-at-arms by 2:1. Fighting was undertaken on foot in the manner of the English.

The Scots archers, whilst competent, appear to have been somewhat outclassed by the English archers and we represent this by limiting the number of Scots archers with Swordsmen capability.

The option for Armoured men-at-arms allows for the possibility that their numbers were made up by a significant number of lesser men-at-arms and spearmen in incomplete harness. Additionally, we allow for the possibility that in such cases spears would have been the most common weapon.

The maxima of this list assume that most armies will include French troops. Cooperation between the French and Scots in these cases was, despite some problems, good enough for the French troops not to be classified as an allied contingent. The occasions where there was friction are covered by a Scots allied contingent in a French army.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as men-at-arms.
- Men at arms and retainers marked * must be selected as all Pole arms or all Offensive Spearmen.
- Minimum marked ** applies if more than 1 French battle group is fielded.
- Mounted French men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior, Heavily Armoured, Undrilled, Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.

| Medieval Scottish (in France) | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Men-at-arms and retainers | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 15 | 4-6 | 0-12 | 8-24 |
| | | | Average | | | | 11 | | | |
| | | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 9 | 4-8 | *0-24 | |
| | | | | | - | Offensive Spearmen | | | | |
| Archers | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-24 | 16-48 |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| | | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 16-48 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mounted French men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | **10-24 |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | **4-16 | |
| Dismounted French men-at-arms | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 15 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Average | | | | 11 | | **6-18 | |
| French and other crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | **6-18 | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | |
| | | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | | | 5 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| French vougliers | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| French ribaulds or levy | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 2 | 8-10 | 0-10 | |
| | Mob | | | | | - | | | | |
| Light guns | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| French bombards | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | | |
| Pits or other traps | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-16 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |

| Medieval Scottish (in France) Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Men-at-arms, lesser men-at-arms and retainers | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 15 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 4-12 |
| | | | Average | | - | Pole Arm | 11 | | | |
| | | Armoured | Average | | - | Pole Arm | 9 | 4-8 | *0-12 | |
| | | | | | - | Offensive Spearmen | 9 | | | |
| Archers | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 8-24 |
| | | Unprotected | Average | | Longbow | - | 7 | | | |
| | | | | | Longbow | - | 6 | | 8-24 | |

Hussite

This list covers Hussite armies from Jan Žižka's revolt in 1419 AD until the peace of Olomouc in 1479 AD.

Troop Notes

The Hussites made systematic use of battle wagons. Their army formed up inside a wagon-fortress consisting of wagons protected by wooden hoardings usually drawn up in a rectangle with the wagons joined together by chains. Accounts of the standard wagon crew vary, but according to the "Hodětín Ordinance" it consisted of 20 men: 2 drivers, 2 handgunners, 6 crossbowmen, 4 flailmen, 4 halberdiers and 2 pavisiers. Other sources give a crew of 10 men, but with similar proportions. The handgunners and crossbowmen shot from inside the wagons, while the flailmen and halberdiers defended the gaps between the wagons. The enemy would be goaded into attacking by artillery fire. After the initial enemy assault was repulsed, Hussite cavalry and infantry would counterattack to complete the victory.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Hussite cavalry or Bohemian nobles.

| Hussite | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|-----------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------|--------------|--------------------|------|-----|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Battle wagons and crew | Battle Wagons | - | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Heavy Weapon | 23 | 2-4 | 8-24 | | |
| Separately deployed polearms men | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 14 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 6-24 | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 13 | | | | |
| | | | | Drilled | | | 11 | | | | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 10 | | | | |
| | | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | | 6-20 | | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 9 | | | | |
| | | | | Drilled | | | 8 | | | | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 7 | | | | |
| | | Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | Hussite cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 18 | 4-6 |
| Average | 13 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Bohemian nobles | Knights | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | Light Horse | | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Light guns | Light Artillery | | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-8 | |
| | Battle Wagons | | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | Heavy Weapon | 26 | | | |
| Heavy guns | Heavy Artillery | | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Entrenchments to protect artillery and infantry not on wagons | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-14 | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Polish allies – see Later Polish list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Hussite Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-----|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Battle wagons and crew | Battle Wagons | - | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Heavy Weapon | 23 | 2-4 | 4-12 | |
| Separately deployed polearms men | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 14 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 13 | | | |
| | | Protected | | Drilled | | | 11 | | | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 10 | | | |
| | | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 10 | | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 9 | | | |
| | | Protected | | Drilled | | | 8 | | | |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 7 | | | |

Inca

From 1438 AD, Pachahutec Inca Yupanqui, the ninth *Sapa Inca* (king) of the small Quechua city-state of Cuzco (in south-eastern Peru) conquered most of southern Peru. Cuzco was rebuilt as the capital of the new Empire. At its height the Empire encompassed hundreds of different tribes, each with its own culture, divided into four main linguistic groups – Quechua, Chimu (on the coast), Aymara (in the south) and Uru (in the north). The official language was Quechua.

This list covers Inca armies from 1438 AD until 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Veterans (*huaminca*) were the Inca regiments raised from the capital, Cuzco. They received formal military training from adolescence. The vast majority of troops, however, comprised conscripted militia from throughout the Empire, with equipment supplied by the state. However, weaponry varied according to previous tribal custom – for example, the Conchi used slings, darts and bolas, while the Chuncho and Anti used bows. Each nationality within the Inca army was required by law to wear distinctive tribal insignia, which sometimes involved the colours and patterns of stripes in their *uncu* (the standard Inca sleeveless, shapeless shirt), but mainly head-gear or hair style. Infringement was punishable by 100 lashes.

Some Inca guardsmen were armed with a halberd (*yauri*). Following the conquest of Cañari by Túpac Inca, Cañari spearmen were recruited as royal guardsmen – the loyalty of the Inca nobility being increasingly suspect. The royal guard then also included Anti or Chuncho archers.

Some full-time troops were maintained as frontier garrisons – from the 1490s these were mainly recruited from the Cañari. We classify the earlier units the same as the militia.

The usual Inca shield was a small square of wood with a long fabric apron below. In addition to this, which we do not treat as sufficient to convey Protected status on its own, close combat troops also wore cotton-padded cloth body armour (of the same shape as the normal civilian *uncu*) and quilted cotton and wood or plaited cane helmets.

Spear and halberd heads were copper or bronze. Spear shafts were often fringed with feathers. Most troops also carried a one-handed mace with a star-shaped stone or metal head – we treat this as giving swordsmen capability when used by close combat troops. All ranks of society used the sling, the *Sapa Inca* using slingshot of gold! However, roles were differentiated in battle, so we do not give the close combat troops sling capability. The standard plan was to soften up the enemy with massed slingers, archers, dart throwers and bolas men prior to the hand-to-hand clash of the close combat specialists. The enemy was often engaged by only one third of the army, while the remainder either stood in reserve or attempted to outflank the enemy.

Chanca and Cañari were armed with longer spears than those used by the Incas. Chimu were armed with heavy maces and clubs. Charca were armed with 1.2 metre (4 foot) long 2-handed black chonta-wood swords, 10 cm (4 inches) wide at the tip.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- The C-in-C should be depicted carried on a litter if the *Sapa Inca*, otherwise as guardsmen. Sub-commanders should be depicted as guardsmen or veterans.
- The number of battle groups of Poor militia slingers cannot exceed the number of battle groups of Poor militia spearmen.
- Chanca or Chimu troops from the main list cannot be used in allied contingents of the same nationality.

| Inca | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------|--|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--------------|------|
| Territory Types: Mountains, Hilly, Developed | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | 1 | | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | 0-2 | | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | 0-3 | | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | | | | | Close Combat | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Veteran spearmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | | 6-24 | |
| Militia spearmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 24-56 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Militia slingers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | | 12-28 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Inca noble guardsmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pole Arm | 11 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| Cañari guardsmen | Only from 1490 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 11 | 2/3 or all | 6-9 | 0-9 | 0-18 |
| Anti or Chuncho guardsmen | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 1/3 or none | | | |
| | | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6 | | |
| Anti, Chuncho or other forest tribe archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-16 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| Conchi, Colla or similar skirmishers with darts and/or bolas | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|---|--------------------|---|-----|------|------|
| Chanca spearmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-24 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | |
| Chimu warriors | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | |
| Charca warriors | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | |
| Chiribaya or similar spearmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |
| La Paz or similar spearmen | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 4 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 2 | | | |
| Cañari spearmen | Only from 1490 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Average | Undrilled | | | 7 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | Undrilled | | | 5 | | | |
| Pits and chonta wood stakes | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-16 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Chanca allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Chimu allies | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Inca Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Veteran spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| Militia spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 8-24 |
| Militia slingers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | 6-16 |

Later Hungarian

After the death of Albrecht of Habsburg, the Hungarian throne went to the Polish King Władysław III (1440 AD - 1444 AD), passing over the claim of Albrecht's son Ladislaus V Posthumus (born after Albrecht's death) who did not ascend the throne until Władysław's defeat and death at the Battle of Varna against the Ottomans. In 1453 AD Ladislaus was also crowned king of Bohemia. János Hunyadi, Voivode of Transylvania, acted as regent for the child king in Hungary, George of Poděbrady in Bohemia, Ulrich of Celje in Austria.

This list covers Hungarian armies from 1441 AD to 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

Classification of Szeklers presents some difficulty, so we have given a choice of interpretations.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as royal banderium, Hungarian nobles or mercenary men-at-arms.
- Only one ally contingent can be used.

| Later Hungarian | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hungarian nobles or mercenary men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 3-12 | 7-20 |
| | | | Average | Drilled | | | 21 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| Hungarian or other light horse archers | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| Szeklers or Tatars | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | | | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | | | |
| | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-20 |
| | | | Average | | | | 14 | | | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 4-12 | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| | | Protected | | | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 6-18 |
| Handgunners | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 6-8 | 6-8 | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Royal banderium | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 2, 3 or 4 | Up to 1 BG | |
| | | | Superior | | | | 29 | | | |
| Polish or Bohemian men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4 | | |
| Serbian hussars | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Clipeati, armati and supporting archers | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 2/3 or all | 6-12 | 0-24 |
| | | Protected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 1/3 or 0 | | |
| Separately deployed foot archers | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-12 |
| | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |
| | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Peasants | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 10-12 | 0-12 | |
| Light guns | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Heavy guns | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Battle Wagons | Battle Wagons | - | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | Heavy Weapon | 23 | 2-4 | 0-6 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Moldavian allies – see Moldavian or Wallachian allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Polish allies (Only before 1444 AD) – see Later Polish list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Serbian allies (Only before 1447 AD) – see Later Serbian list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Wallachian allies - see Moldavian or Wallachian allies | | | | | | | | | | |

| Later Hungarian Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Hungarian nobles and mercenary men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 3-8 |
| | | | Average | Drilled | | | 21 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Hungarian or other light horse archers | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Szeklers or Tatars | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | |
| | | | | | Bow | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 11 | | | |
| | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| | | | Average | | | | 14 | | | |
| | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear, Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |

Ordonnance French

This list covers French armies from the Ordonnance reforms of 1445 AD until Charles VIII's invasion of Italy in 1494 AD signalled the start of the Great Italian Wars.

Troop Notes

The Ordonnance of 1445 AD decreed the raising of 15 ordonnance companies, each consisting of 100 lances. Each lance consisted of 6 mounted men, comprising a man-at-arms, a coustillier, a page and, depending on which source is believed, either 3 archers or 2 archers and a valet de guerre. Coustilliers were somewhat more lightly equipped cavalry that filled the rear ranks behind the men-at-arms, so are included amongst the men-at-arms, as are valets de guerre. The archers normally rode to battle, but fought on foot. Later in the period, however, they sometimes operated as lance armed cavalry, so can be fielded as such from 1466 AD. From 1480 the Kings of France regularly employed Swiss mercenaries, numbering around 6,000 throughout the remainder of Louis XIth's reign.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as men-at-arms.
- Ordonnance men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Drilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Feudal men-at-arms can always dismount before 1466 AD as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Undrilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Italian men-at-arms can **only** dismount before 1466 AD as Average, Heavily Armoured, Drilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Ordonnance longbowmen upgraded to cavalry can always dismount as Average, Protected, Drilled, Medium Foot – Longbow, Swordsmen, without stakes.
- The minimum marked * applies if any Swiss are used.

| Ordonnance French | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ordonnance men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 6-20 |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 29 | 3-4 | 0-12 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4-6 | 6-12 | |
| Ordonnance longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 8-24 | 8-24 |
| Upgrade Ordonnance longbowmen to cavalry | Only from 1466 AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-16 | |
| Francs-archers | Any date | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 4 | 6-8 | 8-32 | |
| | Only from 1479 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 4 | 8-12 | 0-24 | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow BG | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | All or none | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Polearms men | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Pole Arm | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-16 |
| Spearmen | Only before 1466 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 4 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-18 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | 0-18 | |
| Handgunners | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| Bidets | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Italian men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | | | | Superior | Undrilled | | | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4 | | |
| Swiss mercenaries | Only from 1480 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 9 | 8-12 | *8-16 | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 4 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | | | Firearm | - | 5 | 4-6 | | |
| Light guns | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-2 | |
| Heavy guns | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-4 | |
| Field fortifications or wagon laager | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-16 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Milanese allies (only from 1465 AD) – see Condotta Italian list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Ordonnance French Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Ordonnance men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4-6 | 4-10 |
| Ordonnance longbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| Upgrade longbowmen to cavalry | Only from 1466 AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 |
| Francs-archers | Any date | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Longbow | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-16 |
| | Only from 1479 AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 4 | 8-12 | 0-16 |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow BG | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | All or none |

Mapuche or Araucanian

This list covers the Northern and Southern Mapuche armies, the Spanish name for the Southerners being Araucanian. The origin of the Mapuche is unclear, though DNA evidence suggests a Polynesian link. While they existed from 500 AD, the great majority of information we have comes from their interactions with the Incas, then the Spanish (outside our period). Hence this list is for their armies from 1461 AD, the first significant encounter with the Incas, to 1500 AD.

The Mapuche inhabited what is today Northern Chile. They successfully resisted the Incas, being the only South American people to hold their own against Túpac Inca, whom they fought to a bloody standstill at the Battle of the Maule. Indeed, the strength of the Southern Mapuche was such that they gave the Spanish a very hard time later in the 16th and 17th centuries.

Troop Notes

The Mapuche were each trained from the early age in the use of a single weapon. The Spanish felt this was intended to make them masters in the use of that weapon, rather than semi-competent with several. The exception seems to have been that those armed with bow were also armed with a heavy luma-wood club (*lonco quillquill*), between 2 and 3 metres (6 to nearly 10 foot) in length. It was curved at the end somewhat in the same manner as a hockey stick.

The Northern Mapuche used archers and also troops with short spears. The Southern Mapuche were more formidable. In addition to archers, they used very long spears – up to 25 palmas long according to the Spanish (between 3 and 4 metres – 10 to 13 foot). These were “packed together in a squadron like Germans” – presumably referring to Landsknechts. However, as they retired to difficult going to fight the Spanish cavalry, rather than stand against them in open ground, we classify them as Medium Foot Offensive Spearmen.

Alonso de Ercilla, writing in the mid-16th century, describes them as wearing “strong double corselets, and something like a skirt, armbands, throat guard and caps of hard leather”. The leather was sealskin (perhaps also llama skin), worn until it hardened. Some of the spearmen, at least, carried medium-sized shields.

An army must be selected as either Southern or Northern Mapuche. Neither [can](#) include troops from the other region.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Spearmen

| Mapuche or Araucanian | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodland, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 6-8 | 12-72 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Spearmen | Only Northern | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-24 | 16-72 |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | 6 | 8-10 | 16-72 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | | | | |
| | Only Southern | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-24 | 16-64 |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | 7 | 8-10 | 16-64 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-24 | 0-24 |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | 0-8 | |

| Mapuche or Araucanian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|---------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 6-8 | 6-24 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 7 | | | |
| Spearmen | Only Northern | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 8-24 |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | 6 | 8-10 | 8-24 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| | | | Only Southern | Medium Foot | | | | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | |
| | Protected | Average | | | 7 | 8-10 | 8-24 | | | | |
| | Unprotected | | | | 6 | | | | | | |

Ordonnance Burgundian

This list covers the armies of Duke Charles the Bold from 1471 AD when he first applied his Ordonnance reforms, until his final defeat and death in 1477 AD. It then covers the armies of the remnant of the Burgundian state ruled by Charles' daughter, Mary, and her husband Maximilian until 1500 AD.

Troop Notes

The Ordonnance of 1473 AD specifies a mixed formation for pikemen and longbowmen. The pikemen were to advance in front of the archers so that the archers could fire over them as if over a wall. This formation was used by at least part of the foot at the battle of Grandson. A woodcut shows a unit of roughly equal numbers of archers and pike/voulge armed men behind a row of stakes. Accordingly, Ordonnance pikemen and longbowmen can be deployed in mixed battle groups of 6 bases, with a front rank of pikemen (counting as Defensive Spearmen) and rear rank of longbowmen. Philippe de Commines in 1465 AD commented on the inability of the Burgundian feudal men-at-arms to use their lances properly.

Low countries pikemen were unenthusiastic levies, however, at the Battle of Guinegate in 1479 AD when led by dismounted nobles they were instrumental in defeating the French. On this basis we allow some to be rated as Average. Despite this success they were soon replaced by Maximilian's new landsknechts who were more reliable and more effective.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as men-at-arms, or, from 1478 AD, pikemen.
- Before 1478 AD ordonnance or other mercenary men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior or Average (as mounted type), Heavily Armoured, Drilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Household gendarmes can always dismount as Superior, Heavily Armoured, Drilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Feudal men-at-arms can always dismount as Superior, Heavily Armoured, Undrilled Heavy Foot – Pole Arm.
- Bases used in mixed battlegroups are deducted from the number of permitted bases of ordonnance longbowmen and ordonnance pikemen

| Ordonnance Burgundian | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ordonnance or other mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 8-28 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 21 | | 8-28 | | |
| Ordonnance longbowmen | Before 1478AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 6-24 | 0-40 | |
| Ordonnance pikemen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 8-24 | | |
| Mixed BGs each replacing 4 pikemen and 4 longbowmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 8 | | 0-16 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 1/2 | | | |
| Ordonnance longbowmen | From 1478AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 6-16 | | |
| Low Countries militia | From 1478AD to 1480AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 12-32 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | 0-24 | | |
| Landsknechts | From 1481AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 16-48 | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow and mixed BG | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | All or none | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Household gendarmes | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 33 | 2 or 3 | Up to 1 BG | | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 29 | 3-4 | | | |
| Italian mounted crossbowmen | | Light horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| Ordonnance Italian crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | |
| Ordonnance handgunners | | Light foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 6 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Feudal men-at-arms | Before 1478AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 17 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| Feudal crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6 | 0-6 | | |
| Low Countries pikemen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 4 | 8-12 | 0-12 | | |
| Light guns | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-6 | | |
| Heavy guns | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-4 | | |
| Field fortifications | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-12 | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| English allies (only from 1472 AD to 1483 AD) – see Late Plantagenet English (Continental) list | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Ordonnance Burgundian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|---------|----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------|--|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | | |
| Ordonnance or other mercenary men-at-arms | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | | 4-12 | | |
| Ordonnance longbowmen | Before 1478AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | | 0-12 | 6-20 | |
| Ordonnance pikemen and vougiers | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8 | | 0-12 | | |
| Mixed BGs each replacing 4 pikemen and 4 longbowmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 1/2 | | | | |
| Ordonnance longbowmen | From 1478AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Longbow | Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | | 0-6 | | |
| Low Countries militia | From 1478AD to 1480AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 4 | 8-12 | 8-12 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 6 | | 0-8 | | | |
| Landsknechts | From 1481AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | | 8-24 | | |
| Stakes to cover half the bases of each longbow and mixed BG | | Portable defences | | | | | | 3 | | | All or none | | |

Santa Hermandad Nueva Castilian

This list covers the armies of Castile from the creation of the Santa Hermandad Nueva in 1476 AD until its disappearance with the ordinance of 1497 AD, which for the first time reorganized the infantry into thirds of differently equipped troops, starting a series of reforms that would end up with the Tercios that began modern warfare. This was the army that finally conquered Granada, the last Moslem state in Spain, in 1492 AD.

Troop Notes

Infantry became more and more important, accounting for up to 5/6 of the army that finally took Granada. In parallel, the number of men-at-arms was reduced in favour of extra light cavalry, and by the end of the war there were up to ten times as many jinetes as heavy cavalry. The ordinance of 1488 organized the Santa Hermandad Nueva into 12 companies of 720 spearmen and 80 arquebusiers, plus 24 officers, 8 drummers and a standard-bearer. Some of those companies were equipped with pikes instead of spears, and operated in the manner of the Swiss and Germans. Other Hermandades had equal numbers of spearmen and crossbowmen, and sword-and-buckler men were used specially for assaults during sieges. The military orders were still present in the War of Granada; the master of the Order of Calatrava was killed at Loja in 1482 AD, and the master of the Order of Santiago commanded the rearguard of the army that had to withdraw from the mountains of Malaga in 1483 AD. Other troops included almughavars and Swiss mercenaries. Classification of the fighting style of almughavars presents a problem – therefore we give a choice of classification. The artillery train was a very important part of the army and played a decisive role in the different sieges that took place over the War of Granada.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as men-at-arms.
- * After 1482AD no more than 8 bases of knights may be used.

| Santa Hermandad Nueva Castilian | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-8 | *4-16 | |
| | | | Average | | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | 0-8 |
| Military order men-at-arms | Knights | | Superior | Drilled | | | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| Jinetes | Light Horse | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 8 | 4-6 | 4-12 | 8-24 | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | | | | | |
| | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 11 | 4-6 | 4-12 | | |
| | | Protected | | | | | | | | | |
| Santa Hermandad Nueva spearmen | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 6-24 | 8-24 | |
| | | Protected | | | | | | | | | 8 |
| Santa Hermandad Nueva pikemen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-12 | | |
| Other Hermandad spearmen | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 8-24 | |
| Mixed Hermandad spearmen and crossbowmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | | 0-16 |
| | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | 0-16 | |
| Hermandad crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 8-24 | |
| Hermandad arquebusiers | Light Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Firearm | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hermandad sword and buckler men | Medium foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Impact foot Skilled Swordsmen | 15 | 4-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 12 | | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | Light Horse | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 11 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | | | |
| Military order crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6 | 0-6 | | |
| Other spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Other crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Other archers | | | | | Bow | - | | | | | |
| Skirmishing infantry | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | | Bow | - | | | | | |
| | | | | | Javelins | Light Spear | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|----------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|----|-----|-----|
| Almughavars and adalides | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 7 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | |
| Heavy guns | | Heavy Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Heavy Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-4 |
| Swiss mercenaries | From 1482AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 9 | 8 | 0-8 |
| Field Fortifications | | Field Fortifications | | | | | | 3 | | 0-8 |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 |

| Santa Hermandad Nueva Castilian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Men-at-arms | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | 0-6 | |
| Jinetes | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 8 | | | | |
| | Cavalry | Protected | | | | | 8 | | 0-8 | | |
| | | Armoured | | | | | 11 | | | | |
| Santa Hermandad Nueva spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 8 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-12 | |
| Armoured | | 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| Santa Hermandad Nueva pikemen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Pikemen | 6 | 8 | 0-8 | | |
| Other Hermandad spearmen | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | 8-20 |
| Mixed Hermandad spearmen and crossbowmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | | 1/2 | | 0-8 | |
| Hermandad crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |

Cuman

The nomadic Cumans appeared in the steppes north of the Black and Caspian seas in the 11th century, after defeating the Pechenegs. From this base they raided the Byzantine Empire, the Kingdom of Hungary, and the Russian principalities. Various groups took part in the wars of the surrounding nations. In 1238 they were decisively defeated by the Mongols. Many took refuge in Hungary, Bulgaria and the Byzantine Empire. Those who remained on the steppe became part of the Mongol Golden Horde. The Cuman language survived in Hungary until the 17th century. Bolt shooters were often carried on camels. This list covers Cuman (also known as Kipchak Turk or Polovtsy) armies from 1054AD until 1238AD. After this date they may continue to be used until 1394AD as allies of other nations, as specifies in those army lists.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as noble cavalry.

| Cuman | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|--|
| Territory Types: Steppes | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-2 | | |
| Cuman ally commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-2 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Noble cavalry | Only from 1122AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 20 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 8-20 | |
| | | | | | | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-16 | | | | |
| | Any date | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 4-8 | | |
| Light cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-12 | 12-48 | |
| | | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 8-40 | | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 10 | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Peasant Foot | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Vlach foot | Only from 1122AD to 1269AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | | | | | Javelins | Light Spear | | | 0-16 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | |
| Mangonels and Bolt-shooters | Only from 1180AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 20 | 2 | 0-4 | | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pecheneg allies - see book 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Byzantine (only from 1091AD to 1235AD) - see Komnenan Byzantine list | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rus allies (only from 1222AD to 1225AD) – see Later Rus and Early Russian list | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Cuman Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Ally commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Noble cavalry | Only from 1122AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 0-8 |
| | Any date | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 15 | 4-6 | 0-4 | |
| Other cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 4-8 | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | |

Papal Italian

Papal States included the March of Ancona, The Duchy of Spoleto, The Tuscan Patrimony, Campagna, Marittima and Romagna, governed by officials called rectors. A substantial number of feudal knights were available from these territories. More reliance, however, was placed on the town militias, although requests for troops were often ignored or met by the supply of only token contingents. Increasing numbers of mercenaries were also employed. If all else failed, the Pope could call a Crusade – and this was done several times against rebellious cities as well as external enemies. This covers Papal armies from 1050AD to 1320AD.

Troop Notes

There was a heavy reliance on allied and other mercenary troops, with the infantry heavily outnumbering the mounted. The army rarely took to the field without at least one Allied commander accompanying it.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Knights.
- Between 1 and 3 'external' allied commands must be used, and cannot include an 'internal' (Papal Italian) ally.

| Papal Italian | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------|--|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|--|-----|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-1 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-2 | | |
| Allied commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal Knights and Sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| Mercenary Knights and Sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | From 1150AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | | | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 | | |
| | | | Average | Drilled | 21 | | | 4-6 | 0-12 | | | |
| Town militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | 0-16 | | |
| Mercenary Spearmen | Any date | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-16 | | |
| | From 1150AD | | Armoured | | | | | 9 | | | | |
| Feudal Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 8-10 | 0-16 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| Mercenary Crossbowmen | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 6-20 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Pavisiers and Crossbowmen | From 1200AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | | | 6-8 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | | | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 5 | 1/2 | 6-8 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | 5 | 1/2 | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Mounted Crossbowmen | From 1200AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| | | Light Horse | Unprotected | | | | - | 7 | | | | |
| Foot archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| Javelinmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Javelin | Light Spear | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Byzantine allies (only before 1072AD) – see Nikephorian Byzantine list | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Italian Communal allies – up to 2 contingents | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Italian Feudal allies – see Italian Feudal allies list | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Norman allies (only before 1150AD) – see Italo-Norman & Sicilian list | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Papal Italian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied Commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Feudal Knights and Sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 3 | 0-3 | |
| Mercenary Knights and Sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | Heavily Armoured | | Superior | Undrilled | 26 | | | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| | | | Average | Drilled | 21 | | | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| Town militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 8-10 | 6-16 | 6-16 |
| Mercenary Spearmen | Any date | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | From 1150AD | | Armoured | | | | | 9 | | | |
| Crossbowmen | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-8 |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | |
| Pavisiers and Crossbowmen | From 1200AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | Crossbow | - | 7 | 1/2 | | |

Later Rus and Early Russian

By the mid-11th century, the fusion of Scandinavian and Slavic elements that was Kievan Rus had reached the height of its power under Prince Yaroslav the Wise, ruling over a huge territory comprising modern Belarus, northern Ukraine and western Russia. The senior Rurikid Prince ruled from Kiev, while the other Rus cities were governed by junior princes of the dynasty. To the south, the steppe was dominated by the nomadic Cumans (known to the Russians as Polovtsy). To the west were the kingdoms of Poland and Hungary. At this time, Kievan Rus was not only geographically the largest, but also in several ways one of most cultural advanced states in northern Europe. Literacy was widespread, and Kiev's population was four times that of contemporary London. As time went on, however, the increasingly numerous princes came to identify more with their local regions than with the larger polity. They fought amongst themselves, often seeking external alliances with the Cumans, Poles or Hungarians. Trade declined after the Crusades, especially the Fourth Crusade, opened up alternative trade routes with the Middle East. By the time of the Mongol invasion the region was divided into a number of rival principalities, including the Principalities of Kiev, Vladimir-Suzdal, Chernigov, Halych-Volhynia, Polotsk and Smolensk, and the Republic of Novgorod.

In 1223 an army of several Rus principalities, with Cuman allies, was defeated at the Kalka River by a Mongol reconnaissance force. Between 1236 and 1238, Mongol forces subjugated the Volga Bulgars, the Cumans and the Russian principalities. Most of the major cities, including Kiev, were sacked. The south Russian principalities of Kiev and Chernigov were completely subjugated, the others, with the exception of Novgorod, were reduced to vassal status. After 1240AD only the Novgorod state remained independent.

Alexander Nevsky, as elected Prince of Novgorod, won victories over the Swedes at the Neva in 1240AD and the Teutonic Knights at Lake Peipus in 1242AD – though both of these "battles" may in fact have been more in the nature of skirmishes, and their importance subsequently exaggerated for propaganda purposes. In 1252AD he was installed as Grand Prince of Vladimir, which he remained until his death in 1263AD. Daniil Aleksandrovich, the youngest son of Alexander inherited the territory and founded the Principality of Moscow, which was later to become (in 1283AD) the Grand Duchy of Moscow.

This list covers the Later Rus armies from 1054AD until 1237AD, the army of Novgorod from 1238AD until 1282AD, and Early Russian armies from 1283AD until 1547AD, during which time we assume that horse archer tactics had been universally adopted under Mongol influence.

Troop Notes

The proportion of cavalry steadily increased during this period. The numerous princes and their retinues (*druzhina*) supplied armoured cavalry. Turkic mercenary horse archers, including Pechenegs and other Turkic nomad tribes, were employed in large numbers and often settled in Russian territory – becoming "our pagans" (*svoi poganye*). Town militia (*polk*) supplied well-equipped spearmen, whose proportion in field armies steadily decreased throughout the period. They also supplied a few relatively poorly equipped cavalry, usually used as scouts. Land-owning peasants (*smerdy*) were sometimes called up to fight but were of general poor quality, lacking experience or good equipment.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as noble cavalry.
- Russian ally-commanders' contingents must conform to the Early Russian allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.
- The minimum marked * only applies before 1283AD or if any foot are used.
- ** Germans and Lithuanians cannot be used together nor with Polish or Hungarian cavalry.

| Later Rus and Early Russian | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----|-------------|-------|---|---|----------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodlands, Steppe (only from 1283AD) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | | | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | | | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-1 | | | | | |
| Russian ally commanders | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-2 | | | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | | | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Nobles and retainers | Any Date | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | | 4-20 | 12-32 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 12 | | | 4-12 | | | | |
| | | Protected | Average | 9 | | | | 0-8 | | | | | | | |
| | Only from 1240AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | | 4-12 | | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 14 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Town militia spearmen with or without supporting archers | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 8 | 2/3 or all | 8-9 | *8-24 | *8-48 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | | | | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | | | Bow | | | | | - | 5 | 1/3 or 0 |
| Peasant spearmen with or without support archers | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 4 | 2/3 or all | 8-9 | 0-9 | | | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | | | Bow | | | | | - | 3 | 1/3 or 0 |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Separately deployed archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-16 | | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | | | | | |
| Turkic mercenaries | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | 8-24 | | | | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | | | | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | | | | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|-------------|------------------|----------|-----------|----------|-----------------------|----|------|-----|--------|
| Town militia cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| German mercenary knights | Only before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | 0-6 | **0-8 |
| | Only from 1150AD | | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | |
| | Only from 1200AD | | | Average | Drilled | | | 21 | 4 | | |
| Lithuanian cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | | | | - | | | | | |
| Polish cavalry | Only before 1200AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 17 | 4 -6 | 0-6 | **0-12 |
| | from 1200AD to 1241AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | | |
| | Only from 1242AD | | Heavily Armoured | | | | | 26 | 3-4 | | |
| Hungarian cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4-6 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | | | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | | |
| Poorly equipped peasants | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | - | 2 | 8 | 0-8 | |
| Fortified camp | | | | | | | | 24 | | 0-1 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cuman (Polovtsy) allies – see Cuman list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hungarian allies – see Early Hungarian list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Polish allies (Only from 1150AD) – see Book2 – Early Polish Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Teutonic allies (only from 1221AD to 1223AD) – see Teutonic Knights list (ignore Teutonic start date) | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Later Rus and Early Russian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|--|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------|-------------|---------|
| Ally commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Nobles and retainers | Any Date | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 4-12 | 4-12 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 12 | | | | 0-4 |
| | | | Protected | Average | | | | 9 | | | | |
| | Only from 1240AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 14 | | | | |
| | | | Town militia spearmen with or without supporting archers | | | | | Heavy Foot | | | Armoured | Average |
| Protected | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | | | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 1/3 or 0 | *6-12 | | |
| Separately deployed archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 4-6 | | 0-6 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | | |
| Turkic mercenaries | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | 4-8 | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | | | |

Post-Viking Scandinavian

At the start of the period, after a period of civil war, Denmark was united under the rule of Valdemar the great (1131AD-1182AD), who built Denmark into a major power in the Baltic region. He and his successors launched several crusades against the pagan tribes of the Baltic, adding parts of Wendland and northern Estonia to the Danish Kingdom.

Norway suffered a series of civil wars between 1130AD and 1240AD, when King Hakon Hakonsson defeated his last royal rival. Hakon brought Iceland and Greenland under Norwegian rule. Orkney, the Western Isles of Scotland and the Isle of Man were already at least theoretically subject to Norwegian rule.

From 1130 the throne of Sweden alternated for several generations between rival houses of the Sverker in Ostergotland and Eric in Uppland. In the 1220s the Eric dynasty got the upper hand, and the Sverker dynasty became extinct.

This list covers the Scandinavian armies of Denmark, Norway and Sweden from 1150AD until 1300AD.

Troop Notes

The mainstay of the Scandinavian armies in this period was still the infantry shieldwall (skjaldborg) armed with various combinations of sword, axe, throwing and trusting spears. Archers formed up in the rear ranks. Hirdmen were paid household troops, and continued to make much use of the traditional two-handed axe. Mounted knights were increasingly important, however, particularly in Denmark, although always heavily outnumbered by infantry.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as Hirdmen or Knights
- Knights can always dismount as Superior or Average, Armoured or Heavy Armoured (as mounted), Undrilled Heavy Foot – Heavy Weapon.

| Post- Viking Scandinavian | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|------------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Woodlands | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Knights and Squires | Only Sweden or Denmark before 1200AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | | 0-12 | 0-18 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | | | |
| | Norway from 1250AD, others from 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | | |
| Hirdmen | Denmark before 1200AD, others at any date | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy weapon | 13 | 2/3 or all | 6-9 | 6-18 | |
| | | Light foot | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | - | 7 | 1/3 or none | | 0-9 | |
| Leidang | Denmark or Sweden only | Heavy foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 9 | 2/3 or all | 8-9 | 0-12 | 24-72 |
| | Any | Heavy foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | | | | |
| | | Light foot | Unprotected | Average | | Bow | - | 5 | 1/3 or none | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Bodyguards | Norway or Sweden only | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 15 | 4-6 | | 0-6 | |
| | Denmark only | | Heavily Armoured | | | - | Heavy weapon | 18 | | | | |
| Mounted Crossbow | Denmark from 1200AD, others from 1250AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Drilled | Bow or Crossbow | Swordsmen | 14 | 4 | | 0-4 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 13 | | | | |
| Separately deployed archers | | Light foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| Mercenary archers | Norway only | Medium foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | | 0-8 | |
| Svenner | Norway only | Heavy Foot | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Polearms | 11 | 6 | | 0-6 | |
| | | Medium foot | Armoured | | | Bow* | | 10 | | | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Medium foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | | 0-12 | |
| Light Catapult | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | | 15 | 0-2 | | 0-2 | |
| Trebuchet | | Heavy Artillery | | | | Heavy Artillery | | 20 | 0-2 | | | |
| Fortified camp | | - | | | | - | - | - | - | - | | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| German Ecclesiastical Allies (Only Denmark) | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Post- Viking Scandinavian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied Commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Knights and Squires | Only Sweden or Denmark before 1200AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-9 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | | |
| | Norway from 1250AD, others from 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | |
| Hirdmen | Denmark before 1200AD, others at any date | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy weapon | 13 | 2/3 or all | 6-9 | 0-6 |
| | | Light foot | Unprotected | | Undrilled | Bow | - | 7 | 1/3 or none | | 0-3 |
| Leidang | Denmark or Sweden only | Heavy foot | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 9 | 2/3 or all | 8-9 | 0-6 |
| | | Heavy foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | | | 8-24 |
| | | Light foot | Unprotected | Average | | Bow | - | 5 | 1/3 or none | | |

Later Sicilian & Naples

This list covers the armies of the Kingdom of Sicily from 1154AD until the Kingdom was split by the War of the Sicilian Vespers in 1282AD. Thereafter it covers the armies of the Angevin Kingdom of Naples until 1320AD and those of the Kingdom of Sicily until the union with Naples in 1442AD.

When the last of the Norman Kings died without male heirs, the German King Heinrich VI took control of the Kingdom in 1194AD. The Stauffer dynasty continue to rule and struggle with the Papacy until the battles of Benevento in 1266 and Tagliacozzo in 1268AD finally saw the end of their reign in Sicily.

The new Papal - sponsored King of Sicily, Charles of Anjou consolidated his position by 1270AD, having put down severe resistance. His repressive rule however, culminated in a revolt in Sicily (Sicilian Vespers) in 1282AD, giving Pere III of Aragon a pretext to invade Sicily. The Angevins gave up all rights to Sicily in 1302AD and it remained independent until 1409AD when it was inherited by The King of Aragon.

Troop Notes

By the end of 13th century, Greek troops were relegated to the Arriere-ban.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted as knights.
- From 1282AD an army must be either be that of Sicily or that of Angevin Naples
- All Medium Foot Almughavars must be classified the same.

| Later Sicilian & Naples | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|------------------|-----------|----------------------|--------------|---|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Developed, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub- Commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Feudal, Italian Communal Knights and sergeants | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Elite | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 30 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 12-36 | |
| | | | | Superior | | | | 26 | 3-4 | 0-18 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 8-36 | | |
| Imperial ministeriales | from 1215AD to 1250AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 | 12-36 | |
| Mercenary Knights | | | | Average | | | | 21 | 4-6 | 0-20 | | |
| Saracen Archers | Before 1266AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 16-36 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 16-32 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | - | 6 | | | | |
| | Only Angevins | Light Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 3 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | | 8 | | | |
| Almughavars | Only Sicily from 1292AD to 1301AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | All Impact Foot Swordsmen or All Offensive Spearmen | 11 | 6-8 | 0-16 | 12-36 | |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 8 | 6-8 | 0-36 | | |
| | | | | Undrilled | 7 | | | 8-10 | | | | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled or Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
| Saracen Cavalry | Only before 1267AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 18 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 13 | | | | |
| | | Light horse | Protected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 8 | 4-6 | 0-12 | 0-12 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | | 0-4 | | |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | 8 | | | | |
| Saracen Close fighters | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | | Protected | | 7 | | | | | | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | |
| Berber light horse | | Light horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| Feudal, Communal and Mercenary Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-24 | |
| | | | Protected | | Drilled | | | 7 | | 0-24 | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | | 8-10 |
| Communal Crossbowmen | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 0-16 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | | | | - | 7 | 6-8 | | | |
| | Only from 1200AD | Heavy Foot | Protected | | | Crossbow | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | | 0-16 |
| | | Medium Foot | | | | | | 1/2 | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------|-------------|-------------|---------|-----------|----------|-----------------------|---|------|------|
| Feudal Crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Mercenary Crossbowmen | | | | | Drilled | | | 7 | | |
| Catalan Crossbowmen | Only Sicily | Light Foot | Unprotected | | Undrilled | | | 5 | | |
| Greeks | Only before 1200AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 6-8 | 0-16 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | |
| Arriere Ban | | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | | - | - | 2 | 8-12 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Aragonese Allies (only Sicily from 1302AD) see Medieval Spanish and Portuguese list | | | | | | | | | | |
| Communal Italian Allies (only before 1282AD) see Communal Italian list | | | | | | | | | | |

| Later Sicilian & Naples Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|---|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allies commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Feudal, Italian Communal Knights and sergeants | | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | 4-12 |
| Saracen Archers | Before 1266AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6-8 | 6-12 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | - | 6 | | |
| Almughavars | Only Sicily from 1292AD to 1301AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | All Impact Foot Swordsmen or All Offensive Spearmen | 11 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | Drilled | | | 8 | | 0-16 |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 7 | | |

Thai Kingdoms

In the mid-13th century (1238AD), Sri Indradit led a rebellion of Thai states against the local Khmer government. Sukhothai was established as an independent state and was to remain the centre of Thai power until it fell to the Ayutthaya Kingdom in 1438AD.

In 1349 Sukhothai was invaded by Ayutthaya and forced to become a tributary. In 1438AD Borommachathirath II of Ayutthaya installed his son Ramesuan on the throne, effectively ending Sukhothai as an independent kingdom.

This list covers the armies of the Sukhothai Kingdom (1238AD to 1438AD) and the armies of the Ayutthaya Kingdom (1351 AD to 1500 AD).

Troop Notes

The Thai Army was organized into three branches: the standing forces of the Palace Guards and the Capital Defence Corps, and the field levies. The Palace Guards who protected the king and his family. The Capitol Guard who protected the city of Sukhothai. The third force was the field levies or conscripts, who were usually raised when needed during wartime. The infantry was the backbone of the Thai army but elephantry, cavalry, artillery and naval corps were drawn from specific villages that had hereditary specialists in those military skills.

In the Sukhothai and Ayutthaya Kingdoms, a variety of weapons were employed such as:

- **Krabi (Sword):** A curved sword, often used in pairs for slashing and thrusting.
- **Krabong (Staff):** Often used with another weapon or shield.
- **Daab (Straight Sword):** Less common than the krabi, the straight sword was also used in the earlier period.
- **Tridents, Spears and Lances:** Various types of polearms were used, generally reflecting regional influences.
- **Crossbows and Bows:** Archery was commonly used from horseback or on foot. Crossbows, which required less training, were used to a lesser extent.
- **Ngaw (Blade Staff):** The Ngaw is a long staff with a blade or spike at one end, sometimes both. It is treated as a Polearm.

Elephants were used as mobile platforms for archers or as an effective battering rams with spearmen on their backs.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted on elephants, or as cavalry if Ayutthaya.

| Thai Kingdoms | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Agricultural, Tropical, Hilly, Mountains | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Elephants | Only Sukhothai | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 28 | 2-3 | 2-9 | |
| | Bow | | | | | 28 | | 0-6 | | 4-12 | |
| | Only Ayutthaya | | | | | - | | 25 | | | 2-12 |
| Palace Guards | | Medium Foot | Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Polearm | 14 | 6-8 | 6-12 | |
| | | | | | | Bow | Swordsmen | | 4-6 | | |
| Capital defence corps | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-32 | 8-32 |
| | Only Ayutthaya | | | | | - | Defensive Spearmen | | | 0-16 | |
| Cavalry | Only Ayutthaya | Cavalry | Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 4-6 | |
| | Any | | Protected | | | Bow | Light Spear | 10 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Field levies | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 8-10 | 8-40 | 16-60 |
| | Only Sukhothai | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 2 | 8-12 | 8-24 | |
| | Only Ayutthaya | | | | | | | | | 0-12 | |
| | Only Sukhothai | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 6 | 8-12 | 8-32 | |
| | Only Ayutthaya | | | | | | | | | 8-16 | |
| | Any | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 8-36 | 8-36 |
| | Crossbow | | | | | 0-12 | | | | | |

| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|----------------|-----------------|-------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|----|-----|------|
| Light cavalry | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 4 | 0-4 |
| Skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelin | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| | | | | | | Bow | - | | | 0-12 |
| Handgunners | Only Ayutthaya | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearms | - | 5 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| Artillery | | Light Artillery | - | | | Light Artillery | | 15 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Bolt Shooters | | Light Artillery | - | Average | Drilled | Light Artillery | - | 17 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
| Only Ayutthaya | | | | | | | | | | |
| Lan Xang allies (Only from 1353 AD to 1390 AD) | | | | | | | | | | |

| Thai Kingdoms Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied Commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Elephants | Only Sukhothai | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 28 | 2-3 | 2-3 | |
| | Bow | | | | | 28 | | 0-2 | | 2-4 | |
| | - | | | | | 25 | | 2-4 | | | |
| Capitol defence corps | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | 0-12 |
| | Only Ayutthaya | | | | | - | Defensive Spearmen | | | 0-8 | |
| Field levies | Any | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 8-10 | 8-16 | 8-20 |
| | Only Sukhothai | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Impact Foot Swordsmen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-12 | |
| | Only Ayutthaya | | | | | | | | | 0-8 | |
| | Any | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |

Lan Xang

Traditionally the history of Lan Xang (modern-day Laos) began in 1316AD with the birth of Fa Ngum, who as a youth was sent to the Khmer Empire to live as a son of King Jayavarman IX, during which time he was married to princess Keo Kang Ya. In 1349 Fa Ngum was given an army known as the "Ten Thousand" to take the crown. By 1353AD Fa Ngum had defeated his rivals and taken the crown – he named his Kingdom Lan Xang Hom Khao “The Land of a million Elephants and the White Parasol” – elephants symbolizing military strength the white parasol symbolized royalty.

Although Lan Xang was to become one of the largest Kingdoms in South-East Asia, The Kingdom suffered from constant regional power struggles and succession disputes, and its territories shrank as neighbouring kingdoms, particularly the Thai, and Dai Viet encroached.

This list covers the armies of the Lan Xang from its founding in 1353AD until 1707AD.

Troop Notes

Lan Xang maintained a standing army with many elephants 150,000 cavalry and Infantry in regiments of 10,000.

Initially based upon Khmer organisation, the army was converted to more resemble the Ming Chinese organisation by the end of the period.

Building a customised list using our army points

Choose an army based on the maxima and minima in the list below. The following special instructions apply to this army:

- Commanders should be depicted on elephants, or as Guard cavalry.
- A Provincial Allied Commander's contingent must conform to the Lan Xang Allies list below, but the troops in the contingent are deducted from the minima and maxima in the main list.

| Lan Xang | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------|--|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Territory Types: Tropical, Agricultural, Hilly | | | | | | | | | | | |
| C-in-C | | Inspired Commander/Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | 80/40/30 | | 1 | | |
| Sub-commanders | | Field Commander | | | | | 40 | | 0-2 | | |
| | | Troop Commander | | | | | 30 | | 0-3 | | |
| Provincial Allied commander | | Field Commander/ Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1-2 | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Core Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Elephants | | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | - | - | 25 | 2-3 | 6-15 | |
| Guard Cavalry | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Guard infantry | | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Other cavalry | Only from 1420AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-12 | |
| Spearmen | Before 1420AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 8-48 | 12-48 |
| | Any Date | Heavy Foot | | | | | Polearm | 8 | | 0-12 | |
| Chinese style troops | Only from 1400AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Light spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 8-24 |
| | | | | | | | - | | 1/2 | | |
| | Only from 1420AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | Light spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | | | | | - | | 1/2 | | |
| Regional Troops | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 8-10 | | 8-50 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelin | Light spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| Optional Troops | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Crossbowmen | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| Hill tribes | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Impact foot Swordsmen | 6 | 8-12 | 0-20 | |
| Subject cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 8 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 4 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Subject archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | Bow | - | 3 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| Handgunners | Only from 1400AD | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Firearms | - | 5 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Rocket launchers or Light guns | Only from 1100AD | Light Artillery | - | Average | Undrilled | Light Artillery | - | 15 | 2 | 0-4 | |
| Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ming Chinese allies (Only from 1420 AD to 1428 AD) – see List Book 3: Yuan Chinese list | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Khmer allies (Only before 1373AD) – see Book2: Khmer or Champa list | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Lan Xang Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied Commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Elephants | | Elephants | - | Average | Undrilled | - | - | 25 | 2-3 | 2-5 |
| Other cavalry | Only from 1420AD | Cavalry | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-4 |
| Spearmen | Before 1420AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 7 | 6-8 | 8-16 |
| Chinese style troops | Only from 1400AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | Light spear | 7 | 1/2 | 6-8 |
| | | | | | | | - | | 1/2 | |
| Regional Troops | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 6 | 8-10 | 0-20 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelin | Light spear | 5 | 4-6 | 0-6 |

Appendix 1 – Allied Lists

| Albanian Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Veteran cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 12 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | Cavalry | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 13 | | | |
| Other cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear Swordsmen | 9 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 6-12 |
| | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 8 | 4-6 | 6-12 | |
| | | Protected | | | | | 9 | | | |
| Mounted crossbowmen | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Archers | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |

| Anatolian Turcoman Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Heavy cavalry | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 19 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| | | Protected | | | | | 15 | | |
| Light cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | 4-6 | 0-12 |
| | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Swordsmen | 10 | | 4-18 |
| | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | |
| Foot archers | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6 | 0-6 |
| | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6 | |
| Spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6 | 0-6 |
| | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | |

| Central American Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Military Societies | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Drilled | Javelins | Impact Foot, Swordsmen | 12 | 8 | 0-8 |
| Calpolli foot | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Impact Foot, Swordsmen | 9 | 6-10 | 10-32 |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 8 | | |
| | Medium Foot | Protected | Poor | Drilled | Javelins | Impact Foot, Swordsmen | 7 | 6-10 | 0-20 |
| | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | |
| Slingers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Sling | - | 4 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| Archers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | | 0-16 |

| Chanca Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/ Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Veteran spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 8-10 | 8-32 |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | |

| Chimu Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/ Troop Commander | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Veteran warriors | Medium Foot | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 10 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Warriors | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 7 | 8-10 | 8-40 |
| Atlatl skirmishers | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |

| Cilician Armenian Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|-----|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Armenian nobles and retainers | Only before 1100 AD | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 17 | 4-6 | 4-8 | 4-8 |
| | Only from 1100 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | | |
| | Only from 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| Armenian spearmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 8-24 | |
| | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | | |
| Armenian archers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 6 | | | |

| Early Serbian Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Noble cavalry | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 13 | 4-6 | 0-6 |
| | | Armoured | | | | | 17 | | |
| Foot warriors | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 8-36 |
| Archers | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-12 |
| Skirmishing javelinmen | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6 | 0-6 |

| German City Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Mercenary knights and sergeants | Only before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | 0-4 | 0-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | | |
| | Only from 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4 | | |
| Only from 1200 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | | |
| Konstafiers | Only from 1200 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Undrilled | - | Swordsmen | 17 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Mercenary spearmen | Only from 1150 AD | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6 | 0-8 | 8-24 |
| | | | | Undrilled | 8 | | | | | | |
| Militia spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-10 | 8-24 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | |
| Mercenary or good quality militia crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | 0-8 |
| Militia crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Archers | Only before 1200 AD | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 4-6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 6 | | | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | | | 6 | | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 5 | | | |

| German Ecclesiastical Allies | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Ministeriales, or feudal knights and sergeants | Only before 1150 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 4-8 | 4-8 |
| | | | | Average | | | | 16 | | | |
| | Only from 1150 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 26 | 3-4 | 0-6 | |
| | | | | Average | | | | 18 | 4-6 | | |
| Mercenary knights and sergeants | Only from 1200 AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 21 | 4 | 0-4 | |
| Mercenary spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 9 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 8-16 |
| | | | | Undrilled | 8 | | | | | | |
| | | | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 8-12 | |
| | | | | Undrilled | 6 | | | | | | |
| Mercenary crossbowmen | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | - | 7 | 6 | 0-6 | 0-12 |
| Militia crossbowmen | | | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | | |
| Archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Bow | - | 7 | 6 | 0-6 | |
| | | | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | | | 6 | | | |
| | | | | | Undrilled | | | 5 | | | |

| Granadine Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 | |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | |
| Granadine lancers | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Superior | Drilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 29 | 3-4 | 0-4 | |
| Granadine and Berber cavalry | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4-6 | 0-8 | 4-12 |
| | Cavalry | | | | | | 8 | | 4-12 | |
| Town militia or mercenary spearmen | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | - | Defensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-8 | 0-12 | |
| | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | |
| Peasant archers and crossbowmen | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | 6-24 |
| | | | | | Crossbow | - | | | | |
| | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-8 | 6-24 | |
| | | | Poor | | | | | | | |
| | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 5 | 6-8 | | |
| | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | | |

| Italian Feudal Allies | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------|--|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | 1 | | | |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases | | |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | | | |
| Feudal Knights and Sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-4 | 4-12 | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | | | | | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| Mercenary Knights and Sergeants | Before 1150AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 23 | 4-6 | 0-4 | | |
| | From 1150AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | | | | | 26 | 3-4 | 0-4 | | |
| | Before 1200AD | Knights | Heavily Armoured | Average | Drilled | - | Lancer Swordsmen | 21 | 4-6 | 0-6 | | |
| Feudal Spearmen | | Heavy Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | | Defensive Spearmen | 6 | 6-8 | 6-16 | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 4 | | | | |
| Crossbowmen | Any date | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 | | |
| | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Drilled | Crossbow | | 7 | 6-8 | | | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 5 | | | | |
| Scutiferi | Before 1200AD | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 7 | 4 | 0-4 | | |

| Japanese Warrior Monk Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Skilled fighting monks | Before 1467AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 8 | 4-8 | 0-8 |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 10 | | |
| | From 1467AD | | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Pole arms | 10 | 4-6 | |
| Other Monks | Before 1186AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Impact foot Swordsmen | 4 | 8-12 | 12-24 |
| | | | | | | - | Light Spear Swordsmen | 3 | | |
| | Any date | Mob | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Light Spear | 2 | 8-12 | 0-12 |
| | From 1186AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Poor | Undrilled | - | Impact foot Swordsmen | 4 | 6-8 | 8-16 |
| | | | | | | - | Pole arms | 4 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | From 1335AD | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | - | Heavy Weapon | 6 | 6-8 | |
| Mounted Warrior Monks | | Cavalry | Protected | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lights spear Swordsmen | 13 | 2 | 0-2 |
| Bow-armed skirmishers | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 4-6 | 0-6 |

| Medieval Frisian or other Free Canton Allies | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Pole spearmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | - | Offensive Spearmen | 7 | 6-10 | 10-32 |
| | | Unprotected | | | | | 6 | | |
| Crossbowmen | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Crossbow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | 6-8 | |
| Archers | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | |
| | Light Foot | Unprotected | | | | | 5 | | |
| Skirmishing javelinmen | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Javelins | Light Spear | 5 | 6-8 | 0-8 |

| Moldavian or Wallachian Allies | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Allied commander | | Field Commander/Troop Commander | | | | | | 30/20 | | 1 |
| Troop name | | Troop Type | | | | Capabilities | | Points per base | Bases per BG | Total bases |
| | | Type | Armour | Quality | Training | Shooting | Close Combat | | | |
| Nobles | Any | Cavalry | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 19 | 4 | 0-4 |
| | Only Moldavians from 1400 AD | Knights | Armoured | Superior | Undrilled | - | Lancers, Swordsmen | 23 | 4 | |
| Cavalry | | Light Horse | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | Light Spear Swordsmen | 11 | 4-6 | 4-12 |
| | | Cavalry | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow* | Light Spear Swordsmen | 10 | | |
| | | | Protected | | | | | 11 | | |
| Curteni archers | | Medium Foot | Protected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 6 | 6-8 | 0-8 |
| Other archers | | Medium Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 6-12 | 0-18 |
| | | Light Foot | Unprotected | Average | Undrilled | Bow | - | 5 | 0-8 | |
| | | | | Poor | | | | 3 | | |